

高等学校用书·教材

---

# 大学英语语法精讲精练

## English Grammar for College Students

---

主 编 郭敏世

副主编 王文台

编 委 王文台 郭敏世 黄生有 王伟凡

王燕华 吕伟群 何正群 肖静娟

徐 念 胡 峰 王念红

华中科技大学出版社

书 名： 大学英语语法精讲精练

作 者： 郭跃进

出版社： 华中科技大学出版社

出版日期： 2005

ISBN： 7-5609-3474-9/H314

定 价： 22.50

# 前 言

我国高校的英语课程改革正在分步展开，其目标之一就是强调培养学生实际运用语言的能力，要改变语言教学中过分重视语法和词汇知识的讲解和机械运用的一些做法，改“过分”为“适当”，改“单一”（练习）为“多样化”，“改一味的灌输语法知识”为“学法指导”，等等。新时期的语法学习既重视语法的规定性，又关注语法的描写性；既强调语法学习应该为语言运用服务，又体现语法教学的“承载性”（语法结构是语言的载体，没有语法的语言就像没有骨骼的躯体）、“可行性”（哪些句子可以被交际者接受）、“得体性”（语法运用在一定的语境中是否得体）和“现实性”（某种语法结构是否在现实中实际运用）。

语法学习者应该吸收不同语法流派之精华，从中挖掘不同流派带有共性的东西。任何有使用价值的语言应该是结构、功能与社会环境的结合。语法结构只有存在于有意义的语境中，它才会有生命力。从历史观的角度来看，语法是规定性的，但在语用领域，它又具有可塑性；从现实和发展的角度来看，语法又是描写性的。因此，高校语法教学在强调规定性的同时，又要适当关注语法的描写性，强调语法在语言交际中的运用。

《大学英语语法精讲精练》一书的编者本着求新、求实、求活的精神，坚持以学习者为本的原则，力求突破传统语法编写的框架和模式，并在内容上力求新颖、充实和兼容。本书充分吸收了不同版本语法的编写优势，同时精心打造，使本书具有其他同类书籍所不具备的优势和特点：

1. 以分栏的形式处理各语法项内部一般性与特殊性之间的关系，每一章节尊重学习者的心理特点，在谈及一般规律的基础上，探讨规定语法项目的特殊性；
2. 表现了章法与学法之间的关系，以一定的篇幅对读者适当进行学法指导；
3. 处理学习与考试之间的关系，编写目的除应试之外，还注重促进读者语言素质的提高。

全书共分九章，其内容详实，编写体例新颖，每章节由语法精要讲解（含一般要点精解和特别要点精解）、学法指导、历年语法考试真题精选精解、考级阶梯性练习（含单项语法基础练习，单项语法坡度练习，模拟自测题）四个部分构成。

本书编者以竭诚为广大读者服务为宗旨，以推动高校英语教改为目的，为读者奉献一本高质量的学习与教学参考书。希望本书能得到热心读者的认同，同时编者虚心接受读者的反馈意见。

**郭跃进**

2005年6月  
于武汉流芳

目

录

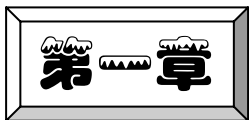
---

第一章 名词	(1)
I. 语法精要讲解	(1)
II. 学法指导	(12)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(12)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(17)
V. 参考答案	(23)
第二章 冠词	(24)
I. 语法精要讲解	(24)
II. 学法指导	(33)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(34)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(36)
V. 参考答案	(41)
第三章 代词	(43)
I. 语法精要讲解	(43)
II. 学法指导	(54)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(54)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(57)
V. 参考答案	(64)
第四章 数词	(65)
I. 语法精要讲解	(65)
II. 学法指导	(72)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(72)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(76)
V. 参考答案	(83)

第五章 动词	(85)
动词分类与时态(1)	(85)
I. 语法精要讲解	(85)
II. 学法指导	(99)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(100)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(104)
V. 参考答案	(110)
动词语态(2)	(111)
I. 语法精要讲解	(111)
II. 学法指导	(114)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(115)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(120)
V. 参考答案	(128)
动词虚拟语气(3)	(128)
I. 语法精要讲解	(128)
II. 学法指导	(134)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(135)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(140)
V. 参考答案	(147)
第六章 非限定动词	(148)
I. 语法精要讲解	(148)
II. 学法指导	(154)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(155)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(160)
V. 参考答案	(166)
第七章 形容词与副词	(167)
I. 语法精要讲解	(167)
II. 学法指导	(186)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解	(187)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习	(192)
V. 参考答案	(198)
第八章 介词	(199)

---

I. 语法精要讲解 .....	(199)
II. 学法指导 .....	(213)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解 .....	(214)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习 .....	(218)
V. 参考答案 .....	(223)
第九章 句子 .....	(224)
I. 语法精要讲解 .....	(224)
II. 学法指导 .....	(235)
III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解 .....	(236)
IV. 考级阶梯性练习 .....	(241)
V. 参考答案 .....	(248)



# 名 词

本章简要总结名词的数、名词的格和名词的性等构成的一般规则，并探讨与名词的数、格和性相关的一些语法现象。

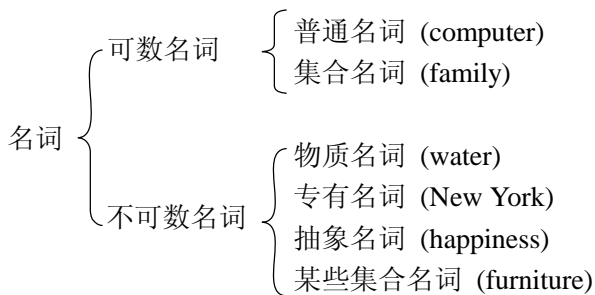
## I. 语法精要讲解

### 1) 一般要点精解

#### (1) 可数名词与不可数名词

英语名词有可数与不可数之分。可以计数的名词叫做可数名词(countable noun);不可计数的名词叫做不可数名词(uncountable noun)。可数名词有单数和复数形式之分,如 houses, dictionaries 等。不可数名词无复数形式,如 weather, humanity 等。我们可以通过名词分类来掌握名词的可数与不可数。

如图所示:



#### (2) 名词数的基本构成

英语中名词复数的基本变化形式是在单数后加-s 或-es, 列表如下:

形 式	构成法	例 词
一般情况	词尾加-s	teachers, desks, mouths, bottles
以 s, x, sh, ch 结尾的名词	词尾加-es	classes, foxes, dishes, watches
以辅音字母 y 结尾的词	变 y 为 i 再加-es	dictionaries, countries, families



续表

形 式	构成法	例 词
以 f, fe 结尾的名词	变 f 或 fe 为 v, 再加-es	leaves, lives, knives
以元音+o 结尾的名词	词尾加-s	zoos, bamboos, radios, taboos, kangaroos, videos, photos
以辅音+o 结尾的名词	词尾加-es	Negroes, echoes, vetoes

### (3) 名词所有格

在现代英语里, 英语名词有两个格(case): 通格(common case)和属格(genitive case)。属格又称为所有格(possessive case), 表示名词与其他名词之间存在的所有关系、主谓关系、动宾关系等意义时, 该名词采用属格形式。

名词的属格有's 属格和 of 属格两种表达形式。

#### ① 's 属格的构成。

名词's 属格的用法有两种: 在名词词尾加“'s”或只加“'”, 不加“s”。

一般来说, 单数名词和不以-s 结尾的复数名词在名词词尾加“'s”。例如:

This is my friend's book. 这是我一位朋友的书。

children's presents 孩子们的礼物

以-s 结尾的复数名词在名词词尾只加“'”, 不加“s”。例如:

the teachers' reference room 教师资料室

my parents' computer 我父母用的电脑

以浊辅音/z/结尾的人名, 词尾可加“'s”, 也可只加“'”, 但都读作/iz/或/z/。

例如:

Dickens' novels 狄更斯的小说

Burns' poems 彭斯的诗

Engels' works 恩格斯的著作

#### ② of 属格的用法。

A. 一般情况下, 无生命特征的名词不能以-s 构成属格, 但它们均可以用 of 构成属格。例如:

the advantage of the economic reform 经济改革的好处

the contributions of science and technology 科技的贡献

the future of the nation 国家的未来

B. 名词前的修饰语较多时, 宜使用 of 属格。例如:

the very long and graceful tail of the old black cat 老黑猫那条又长又美的尾巴

巴

#### (4) 名词的性

名词的性(gender)是名词所特有的语法范畴。名词的性分阳性、阴性和中性(表示无生命物)三种。

① 用后缀构成阴性名词。例如:

actor 男演员	actress 女演员
emperor 皇帝	empress 女皇帝
host 男主人	hostess 女主人
Duke 公爵	Duchess 公爵夫人

② 用不同的词表示阳性、阴性。例如:

lad 小伙子	lass 少女
bridegroom 新郎	bride 新娘
gander 雄鹅	goose 雌鹅
bachelor 单身男子	spinster 未婚女子
widower 鳏夫	widow 寡妇

③ 在通性名词的前面或后面加一个表示阴性或阳性的词。例如:

male frog 雄蛙	female frog 雌蛙
a he-goat 雄山羊	a she-wolf 母狼
a boy friend 男朋友	a girl friend 女朋友

④ 用三个不同的词分别表达阳性、阴性和中性。例如:

father (父亲, 阳性)
mother (母亲, 阴性)
parent (父母亲, 中性)

## 2) 特别要点精解

### (1) 可数名词与不可数名词

① 可数名词与不可数名词的转化。

可数名词与不可数名词类别的划分并非一成不变, 有时可以相互转化。

A. 抽象名词的转化。例如:

experience 经验	experiences 经历
security 安全	securities 证券, 债券
disorder 混乱	disorders 小疾, 微恙
work 工作	works 著作
business 生意	businesses 商店

B. 物质名词的转化。例如:

tea 茶	teas 各种茶
steel 钢	steels 各种钢材

fruit 水果

wood 木材

paper 纸张

C. 专有名词的转化。例如:

Mr. Smith 史密斯先生

Mr. Smiths 几个名为史密斯的先生

Robert Jones 罗伯特·琼斯

the Robert Joneses 罗伯特·琼斯一家 (但需与 the 连用)

Mary 玛丽

two Marys (两个名叫 Mary 的人)

② 可数名词与不可数名词前限定词的用法。

只能限定不可数名词	只能限定可数名词	二者均可
much	many	more
a little	(a) few	some
less	fewer	(the) most
a great deal of	several	plenty of
a great amount of	a great number of	a lot of
		lots of
		a large quantity of
		heaps of

下面三种与英语可数名词和不可数名词相关的表达经常出现在各类英语考试中, 并且很容易造成学习者的误用:

A. the quantity of + 不可数名词 / 可数名词复数

B. the amount of + 不可数名词

C. the number of + 可数名词复数

上述短语作主语时, 谓语动词要用第三人称单数。例如:

The number of jobs is increasing. 工作的数量在增加。

The number of competitors is limited. 竞争者的数量有限。

③ 抽象名词 + itself.

此结构常用作表语成分, 表示强调。例如:

Mr. Green is prudence itself. (Mr. Green is very prudent.) 格林先生很小心谨慎。

The plan was simplicity itself, how could she have misunderstood?(The plan was very simple.) 这个计划简单得很, 她怎么可能会误解了?

④ many a + 单数可数名词。

此结构为“many + 复数名词”的强调形式，后接动词第三人称单数，但表示复数意义。例如：

Many a student has access to the reference room. 许多学生有权使用资料室。

(=Many students have access to the reference room.)

Many a ship has been wrecked off the coast of Africa.

(= Many ships have been wrecked off the coast of Africa .)

许多船在非洲外海失事了。

⑤ 不可数名词的数量表达。

不可数名词表达数量时必须借助量词词组。

A. 较为通用的量词词组：a piece of, a bit of 等。例如：

a piece of bread (information, paper, news, advice, cake, land, chalk, furniture, ice, meat, etc.); a bit of advice (bread, grass, news, trouble, wood, raw material, etc.)。

B. 常见的与容器相关的量词词组：

a bag of sugar 一袋糖

a cup of tea 一杯茶

a basket of dirty clothes 一篮脏衣服

a jar of jam 一瓶果酱

a bottle of wine 一瓶酒

a mug of coffee 一大杯咖啡

a bowl of rice 一碗米饭

a pack of cigarettes 一包香烟

a box of chocolate 一盒巧克力

a plate of chicken 一盘鸡肉

a bucket of water 一桶水

a spoon of soup 一勺汤

a can of soft drink 一听饮料

C. 常见的与形状相关的量词词组：

a bunch of flowers 一束鲜花

a mountain of dirty clothes 一大堆脏衣服

a cake of soap 一块肥皂

a plank of wood 一块木板

a drop of water 一滴水

a ray of hope 一线希望

a gust of wind 一阵风

a strip of plastic 一条塑料带

D. 常见的表示一群人或动物的量词词组：

a cloud of mosquitoes 一群蚊子

a pack of wolves 一群狼

a gang of hooligans 一群歹徒

a school of fish 一群鱼

a group of people 一群人

a swarm of bees 一群蜜蜂

a flock of birds 一群鸟

a troupe of actors 一群演员

a herd of cattle 一群牛

## (2) 名词的数

① 以字母 o, f 或 fe 结尾的名词不规则复数变化。

以辅音字母加 o 结尾的名词通常加-es。例如：

hero—heroes (英雄)

potato—potatoes (土豆)

tomato—tomatoes(西红柿)

torpedo—torpedoes (鱼雷)

echo—echoes (回声)

另外以-o 结尾的缩略词、外来词和专有名词，变为复数时只加-s。例如：

缩略词 kilos(公里)

memos(备忘录)

photos(照片)

外来词 pianos(钢琴)

solos(独奏)

kimonos (和服)

tangos(探戈)

tobaccos(烟草)

专有名词 Eskimos(爱斯基摩人)

Neros(尼禄)

Romeos(罗密欧)

Biros(一种圆珠笔)

② 以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词，多数变 f 或 fe 为 v，再加-es。例如：

calf(小牛), elf(小精灵), half, knife, leaf, life, shelf, loaf, thief, wife, wolf

另外，有些以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词应遵循普通名词的规律，直接加-s。例如：

chiefs(头头)

turfs(草皮)

proofs(证明)

cliffs(峭壁)

gulfs(海湾)

safes(保险箱)

有极少部分以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词两者均可使用，或直接加-s，或变 f 为-ves。例如：

handkerchief(手帕) — handkerchiefs

hoof(蹄) — hoofs

handkerchieves

hooves

wharf(码头) — wharfs

scarf(围巾) — scarfs

wharves

scarves

专有名词 Eskimos(爱斯基摩人), Filipinos

③ 有些表示动物的名词，或以后缀-ese(或-ss) 结尾的表达民族含义的名词，或极少部分与-craft 构成的复合名词，以及某些来自汉语表示度量衡及币制的名词，其单复数同形。例如：

deer 鹿

fish 鱼

sheep 绵羊

buffalo 水牛

shark 鲨鱼

wild duck 野鸭

Chinese 中国人

Swiss 瑞士人

aircraft 航空器

hovercraft 气垫船

ten yuan 10 元

nine jin 9 斤

Sheep were grazing on the hillside. 羊在山坡上吃草。

Aircraft are vehicles which can fly, for example aeroplanes or helicopters.

航空器就是会飞的交通工具，比如说民用飞机或直升机。

This storybook cost her 16 yuan 8 jiao. 这本故事书花了她 16 元 8 角钱。

④ 以-s 或-es 结尾的形似复数的名词，实则单数意义。

A. 某些以-ics 结尾的学科名。例如:

acoustics 声学	economics 经济学
genetics 遗传学	linguistics 语言学
physics 物理学	statistics 统计学

Statistics is a rather modern branch of mathematics.

统计学是数学中非常现代的一个分支。

B. 某些以-s 结尾的疾病名。例如:

diabetes 糖尿病	measles 麻疹
mumps 腮腺炎	arthritis 关节炎

Diabetes is a common disease among middle-aged and elderly people.

糖尿病在中老年人群中较为普遍。

C. 其他情况。例如:

news 新闻	means 手段	whereabouts 下落
---------	----------	----------------

His whereabouts is unknown. 他下落不明。

⑤ 复数名词作前置形容词。

现代英语趋向用名词作前置形容词(premodifier), 使行文显得简练。例如:

the council of the city = the city council (市政评议会)

Professor Smith of Cambridge=Cambridge Professor Smith

现代英语中也出现若干复数名词用作前置形容词的现象。常见的有:

the Accounts Department 会计科	a sports page 报纸的体育版
the civil rights campaign 民权运动	a customs house 海关大楼
a commodities fair 商品交易会	courses committee 课程委员会
a sales manager 销售部经理	careers guide 就业指导
a savings bank 储蓄银行	

⑥ 部分名词只有复数形式, 没有单数形式, 后面接复数形式的谓语动词。

A. 表示成双成对的物体名词。例如:

earphones 耳机	shorts 短裤
trousers 长裤	spectacles 眼镜
pajamas 睡衣裤	scissors 剪刀
compasses 圆规	jeans 牛仔褲

B. 某些以-ing 结尾的名词。例如:

belongings 所有物	surroundings 环境
earnings 挣的钱	findings 调查结果
savings 积蓄	sweepings 垃圾

C. 某些地理名词表示群岛、山脉、海峡以及瀑布等。例如:

Niagara Falls 尼亚加拉瀑布

the Bermudas 百慕大群岛

the Himalayas 喜马拉雅山脉

the Alps 阿尔卑斯山脉

The surroundings of the house are remarkably picturesque. 那房子的环境风景如画。

Our total earnings were, clear of all expense, about 1200 dollars a month.

我们挣的钱除去所有开销差不多每月 1200 美元左右。

The Straights of Gibraltar have not lost their strategic importance.

直布罗陀海峡没有失去战略地位。

⑦ 其他情况。例如：

arms 武器

clothes 衣服

contents 目录

fireworks 烟火

goods 货物

greens 青菜

looks 外貌

papers 文件

remains 剩余部分

riches 财富

ashes 灰烬

valuables 贵重物品

Clothes are very expensive in Hong Kong. 香港的衣服很贵。

The remains of the meal are in the refrigerator. 剩饭放在冰箱里。

All his riches are no good to him if he is so ill. 他病成这个样子，有钱也于事无补。

⑧ 复数意义的名词。

有部分名词，其单数形式与其复数形式的意义不同。这类名词具有复数名词的语法性质(其代词和动词都要求复数形式)，但在语义上与同根的单数名词又有区别。试比较：

arms 武器

arm 手臂

brains 智力

brain 大脑

letters 文学，学问

letter 字母

pains 苦心，努力

pain 痛

regards 问候

regard 注意

premises 上述各点

premise 前提

wits 理智

wit 智力

customs 习俗，海关

custom 习俗

advices 通知

advice 劝告

sands 沙漠

sand 沙子

authorities 当局

authority 权威

woods 树林

wood 木材

This table is made of wood cut from an oak tree. 这桌子是用橡树木头做成的。

The woods are beautiful at that time of year. 这片森林每年的那个时候最好看。

## ⑨ 集合名词的单复数。

有少部分集合名词是单数形式，却用作复数意义。例如：

police 警察	cattle 牲畜
people 人民	militia 民兵
poultry 家禽	mankind 人类

The cattle were grazing on the meadow. 牲畜正在草地上吃草。

The police are making enquiries about the robbery. 警察正在对这起抢劫案作调查。

但大部分集合名词既可作为一个整体来看待，后接单数形式的谓语动词，也可表达该名词所指集体中的各成员个体，当其作主语时，其后谓语动词用复数形式。例如：

audience 观众	army 军队
class 班级	committee 委员会
crowd 人群	faculty 全体职工
family 家庭	government 政府
group 小组	orchestra 管弦乐队
public 公众	team 队

The public is invited to attend. 公众被邀请参加。

The public are given 3 minutes each to express their opinions.

大家每人有 3 分钟时间发表自己的看法。

The audience was deeply impressed by the performance given by Class 3.

三班的表演给观众留下了深刻的印象。

The audience are enjoying every minute of the concert. 听众都非常喜欢这场音乐会。

## ⑩ 复合名词的单复数。

A. 将两个名词分别变为复数。例如：

女教师	a woman teacher	women teachers
男 仆	a man-servant	men-servants

B. 将中心名词变为复数。例如：

男学生	a boy student	boy students
女学生	a girl student	girl students

C. 由名词+介词 / 副词 / 分词等构成的复合名词，只将其中心名词变为复数。例如：

姐夫	a brother-in-law	brothers-in-law
无用的人	a good-for-nothing	good-for-nothings
总编辑	an editor-in-chief	editors-in-chief

D. 由动词+副词 / 分词短语构成的复合名词变复数时只在词尾加“s”。例如：

静坐示威	a sit-in	sit-ins
------	----------	---------



成年人	a grown-up	grown-ups
中间人	go-between	go-betweens
勿忘我(草)	forget-me-not	forget-me-nots

### (3) 名词的格

#### ① 名词的's 属格。

A. 复合名词的所有格在最后一个词后加“'s”。例如：

his sister-in-law's car 他嫂子的汽车

the editor-in-chief's responsibility 总编辑的职责

the grand-children's New Year card 孙儿们的贺年卡

B. 作为整体词组的所有格在最后一个词后加“'s”。例如：

a month and a half's trip 一个半月的旅程

someone else's criticism 别人的批评

C. 两个或两个以上名词组成的并列词组的所有格可在最后一个名词后加“'s”，也可分别在各个名词后加“'s”，但意义不同。例如：

Anderson and Tracy's teacher 意为“安德森和特蕾西共同的老师”。

Anderson's and Tracy's teachers 意指“安德森和特蕾西两人各自的老师(注意此处 teacher 用复数)”。

D. 在一些习语中，'s 属格是约定俗成的习惯用法，此时的's 属格和 of 属格通常不可换用。例如：

at Ann's 在安的家(=at Ann's home)

at the barber's 在理发店(=at the barber's shop)

at the chemist's 在药店(=at the chemist's shop)

at the tailor's 在缝纫店(=at the tailor's shop)

within a stone's throw 咫尺之遥，在附近

get a bird's eye view of a place 鸟瞰

at one's wit's end 黔驴技穷

to one's heart's content 尽情地

keep sb. at arm's length 对某人保持距离

The villa was only a stone's throw from the beach.

该度假别墅离海滩很近。

Keep Mrs. Green at arm's length; she is a gossip.

别和格林夫人太亲近了；她是个长舌妇。

We sang away to our hearts' content. 我们尽情地歌唱。

#### ② 's 属格与 of 属格的互用。

A. 表示人、动物、机构、组织、集体等的名词构成属格时，'s 属格可以与 of 属格

互用。例如：

the daughter of a poor peasant = a poor peasant's daughter 一个贫苦农民的女儿

to win the heart of her daughter = to win her daughter's heart 赢得她女儿的芳心

her family's background = the background of her family 她的家庭背景

the company's decision = the decision of the company 公司的决定

Marx's works = the works of Marx 马克思的著作

两种用法有时有语义上的区别。例如：

an old worker's story (一位老工人讲自己的身世)

the story of an old worker (别人讲老工人的身世)

B. 带有后置修饰语的名词构成所有格时多用 of 属格。例如：

the professor's recommendation 教授的推荐

cf. the recommendation of the professor lecturing at the university

正在该大学讲学的教授的推荐

the friends' suggestion 朋友的建议

cf. the suggestion of the friends in the countryside 乡下朋友的建议

③ 双重属格。

's 属格和 of 属格在同一结构中同时使用时，其构成称之为双重属格 (double genitive)。如 a friend of my father's (我父亲的一个朋友) 中的 of my father's。

A. 双重属格的作用。

a. 表示整体的部分。例如：

a lecture of the philosopher's 那位哲学家的一次演讲

a student of Professor Li's 李教授的一个学生

b. 表示感情色彩。试比较：

one of Dickens' novels 狄更斯的一部小说 (陈述事实)

a novel of Dickens' 狄更斯的小说 (语气亲切)

Tom's big nose 汤姆的大鼻子(平铺直叙)

that big nose of Tom's 汤姆那大得可笑的鼻子 (感情色彩)

B. 双重属格和 of 属格含义上的差别。

a portrait of the painter 这位画家所有的一幅肖像画

a portrait of the painter's 这位画家的一幅肖像画 (画像中画的是画家本人)

a story of Hemingway's 海明威讲的故事

a story of Hemingway 讲海明威的故事或海明威讲的故事





答案: D

提示: 当 snow 被作为复数形式时, 表示“积雪”, 也可理解为“多年下的雪”。

译文: 大家无不为喜马拉雅山的积雪惊叹。

9. The Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ an industrious people.

- A. are                      B. is                      C. was                      D. were

答案: A

提示: Chinese 单、复数同形。这里是复数意义, 作“中华民族”讲。

译文: 中华民族是勤劳的民族。

10. There has been an increasing number of \_\_\_\_\_ in primary schools in the past few years.

- A. men teacher                      B. man teachers  
C. man teacher                      D. men teachers

答案: D

提示: 由 man, woman 与另外的名词组成合成词时, 合成词变复数时, 各部分均须变成复数。

译文: 在过去的几年里, 小学男教师的人数大幅度增加。

11. My special thanks \_\_\_\_\_ to Professor Brown, who read the first draft of this book and gave me a lot of invaluable \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. goes...advices                      B. go...advice  
C. go...advices                      D. goes...advice

答案: B

提示: thanks 是复数, 作主语时, 其后谓语动词用复数形式, 其含义是“感谢”。advice 为不可数名词, 没有复数形式。

译文: 我要特别感谢布朗教授通读这本书的第一稿, 并给我提出了许多宝贵的建议。

12. We visited Niagara \_\_\_\_\_ last summer.

- A. falls                      B. fall                      C. falling                      D. fell

答案: A

提示: fall 用作复数, 意为“瀑布”, 该词单数形式无此义。

译文: 我们去年夏天游览了尼亚加拉瀑布。

13. Both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ room are on the second floor.

- A. Mary...Ann's                      B. Mary's...Ann  
C. Mary's...Ann's                      D. Mary...Ann

答案: C

提示: 两人各自的房间而非两人共有的房间, 故选 C。

译文：玛丽和安的房间都在二楼。

14. Do you happen to know \_\_\_\_\_ talking with the president of the college?

- A. the professor's name                      B. the professor' name  
C. the name of the professor                D. the professor of name

答案：C

提示：名词 professor 后接修饰语，用 of 属格，利于安排句子。

译文：你知道与校长谈话的那位教授的名字吗？

15. I walked too much yesterday and \_\_\_\_\_ are still aching now.

- A. my leg muscles                              B. my muscles of leg  
C. my leg's muscles                            D. my muscles of the leg

答案：A

提示：名词 leg 作定语。此处 leg 说明其后名词的性质。

译文：昨天我走路太多，现在我的腿部肌肉还在疼。

16. If these shoes are too big, ask the clerk to bring you a smaller \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. suit                      B. set                      C. one                      D. pair

答案：D

提示：考查单位名词。此处用成双的 pair。

译文：如果这双皮鞋太大，就请售货员给你拿一双小一点的。

17. German measles \_\_\_\_\_ a dangerous disease for pregnant women.

- A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were

答案：A

提示：German measles 是表示疾病的名词，指“风疹”，复数形式，单数意义。

译文：风疹对于孕妇是一种危险的疾病。

18. England is proud of \_\_\_\_\_ poets.

- A. its                      B. her                      C. it's                      D. their

答案：B

提示：非生物有时可以使用拟人化，用 he 或 she 指代，特别是在文学作品中。

译文：英国为她的诗人们感到自豪。

19. We have \_\_\_\_\_ for Christmas.

- A. two week vacations                      B. vacation of two weeks  
C. two weeks vacation                      D. two weeks' vacation

答案：D

提示：-s 属格可以用于表示时间的名词。

译文：圣诞节我们有两周的假期。

20. He gave us a \_\_\_\_\_ look.

- A. wood                      B. woodened                      C. woods                      D. wooden

答案: D

提示: 有些名词前, 既可用其他名词作定语, 也可用形容词作定语。前者多表示材质和原料, 形容词则说明该名词的属性或特点。

译文: 他对我们板着脸。

21. The number of books on the U.S. universities in this library \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen.

- A. totally                      B. total                      C. totals                      D. in total

答案: C

提示: 考查“the number of + 复数结构”作主语的用法, 此时谓语动词用单数。total 在句中为动词。

译文: 这个图书馆有关美国大学的书籍总数是 15 本。

22. —Why did you change your major from economics to law?

—Because economics \_\_\_\_\_ as interesting to me as law.

- A. isn't                      B. doesn't                      C. aren't                      D. don't

答案: A

提示: economics 虽以-s 结尾, 但是这里表示“经济学”, 意义为单数, 所以谓语须用单数形式。

译文: —你为什么从经济学专业换成了法律专业?

—因为经济学不如法律那样让我感兴趣。

23. The colonel reported it to the \_\_\_\_\_ office.

- A. Chief-of-staff's                      B. Chief's-of-staff's  
C. Chiefs-of-staff                      D. Chief-of-staffs's

答案: A

提示: Chief-of-staff 是英语中的固定表达, 指“参谋长”。其所有格形式为 Chief-of-staff's。

译文: 上校将此事上报给了参谋长办公室。

24. Many fruits \_\_\_\_\_ now: apples, plums, pears, etc.

- A. ripens                      B. ripen                      C. ripened                      D. was ripen

答案: B

提示: fruits 此处为复数, 表示各类水果, 故选 B。

译文: 现在很多水果都成熟了: 苹果、李子、梨子等。

25. When autumn comes, the \_\_\_\_\_ of trees begin to fall.

- A. leafs                      B. leafes                      C. leaves                      D. leaf

答案: C

提示: 此处考查以字母 f 结尾的名词的复数形式。

译文：秋天到来时，树叶开始落下来。

#### IV. 考级阶梯性练习

##### • 单项语法基础练习 •

1. His grandfather suffers from diabetes, which \_\_\_\_\_ a kind of chronic disease.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were
2. The United Nations \_\_\_\_\_ formed in the U.S.A. in 1945.  
A. was                      B. were                      C. is                      D. are
3. Politics \_\_\_\_\_ the art or science of government.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. are
4. Her earnings \_\_\_\_\_ to 600 dollars a month.  
A. comes                      B. come                      C. has come                      D. have come
5. This pair of trousers \_\_\_\_\_ fifty dollars.  
A. cost                      B. costs                      C. is costing                      D. are costing
6. The contents of this book \_\_\_\_\_ most interesting.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. were                      D. was
7. His whereabouts \_\_\_\_\_ known only to his personal staff.  
A. was                      B. were                      C. was being                      D. were being
8. Domestic cattle \_\_\_\_\_ us with milk, beef and hides.  
A. provide                      B. provides                      C. provided                      D. will provide
9. My family \_\_\_\_\_ going shopping with him.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. has been                      D. have been
10. The government \_\_\_\_\_ its best to collect public opinions.  
A. is doing                      B. are doing                      C. is done                      D. are done
11. Many a novel \_\_\_\_\_ translated.  
A. has been                      B. have been                      C. is                      D. are
12. His article is better than \_\_\_\_\_ in the class.  
A. anyone's else                      B. anyone else's                      C. anyone elses                      D. anyone else
13. Keep Mrs. Green at \_\_\_\_\_ ; she is a gossip.  
A. arm's length                      B. the length of the arm  
C. arm length                      D. arms length
14. The committee \_\_\_\_\_ once a month.



- A. meets            B. meet            C. is meeting        D. are meeting
15. The committee \_\_\_\_\_ in opinion about the matter.  
A. is divided        B. are divided        C. divided            D. divide
16. A number of books on the U.S. universities \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen.  
A. is                B. are                C. has                D. have
17. We are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ information about apartments for rent.  
A. an                B. some                C. a number of        D. any
18. Now, many people use the word Ms instead of Miss or Mrs., for example, before the name of \_\_\_\_\_ in business letters.  
A. woman manager                            B. women manager  
C. woman managers                            D. women managers
19. The girl who came this morning is a friend of \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. my sister                                    B. mine sister  
C. my sister's                                    D. mine sister's
20. —Is this room yours?  
—No, it's \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. Mike and John                              B. Mike and John's  
C. Mike's and John's                            D. Mike's and John

• 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. Modern machinery \_\_\_\_\_ in this workshop.  
A. have been installed                        B. has been installed  
C. installed                                      D. are installed
2. Fireworks, which originated centuries ago in China, \_\_\_\_\_ brought to Europe by Marco Polo.  
A. is                B. are                C. were                D. was
3. The public \_\_\_\_\_ interested in talking about the news.  
A. have been        B. was                C. is                D. are
4. The acoustics (音响效果) of this theatre \_\_\_\_\_ admirable.  
A. are                B. is                C. was                D. has been
5. \_\_\_\_\_ car broke down again, but luckily they knew how to fix it.  
A. David and Mac                                B. David's and Mac's  
C. David's and Mac                                D. David and Mac's
6. Informatics (信息学) \_\_\_\_\_ the study of the means by which information is

- collected, processed, classified, and transmitted, especially through computers and other automatic equipment.
- A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were
7. His wages \_\_\_\_\_ 220 dollars a week.  
A. was                      B. is                      C. were                      D. are
8. For her sake, as well as for \_\_\_\_\_, I hope fervently that she might still be found.  
A. John's sake              B. John's                      C. John'                      D. John
9. She is \_\_\_\_\_ I met in the army.  
A. a man daughter                      B. a daughter of man's  
C. a man's daughter                      D. the daughter of a man
10. I will give you \_\_\_\_\_ to finish it.  
A. two weeks time                      B. two week's time  
C. two-week time                      D. two weeks' time
11. The workers' union held three \_\_\_\_\_ last month.  
A. sits-in                      B. sit-ins                      C. sits-ins                      D. sits in
12. Don't you know all of them are efficient \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. language teachers                      B. teaching language  
C. language teacher                      D. language's teachers
13. I've never seen such a big \_\_\_\_\_ of feet.  
A. size                      B. set                      C. pair                      D. couple
14. Shingles \_\_\_\_\_ a disease by an infection of certain nerves and producing painful red spots often in a band around waist.  
A. are                      B. was                      C. were                      D. is
15. The eighteen century was the \_\_\_\_\_ age of the novel.  
A. gold                      B. golden                      C. golds                      D. goldest
16. A teacher's equipment usually includes \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. a few chalks                      B. a few pieces of chalk  
C. a few chalk                      D. a few pieces of chalks
17. Many a woman \_\_\_\_\_ won the first prize.  
A. have                      B. has  
C. have been                      D. has been
18. Great quantities of fish \_\_\_\_\_ on high seas.  
A. is caught                      B. are caught  
C. catch                      D. is catching
19. Although the first part is easy, the rest \_\_\_\_\_ difficult.

- A. could have been                      B. is  
C. has proved                              D. are
20. Having studied your report carefully, I am convinced that neither of your solution  
\_\_\_\_\_ correct.
- A. had                      B. will                      C. are                      D. is

• 模拟自测题 •

1. There is no doubt \_\_\_\_\_ why such a novel sells well.  
A. many reasons                      B. much reason  
C. much a reason                      D. many a reason
2. The public \_\_\_\_\_ convinced of his innocence.  
A. was                      B. is                      C. were                      D. are
3. Everyone danced to \_\_\_\_\_ at the party.  
A. his content heart                      B. the content of his heart  
C. his heart's content                      D. a content of his heart's
4. I have \_\_\_\_\_ for believing the news.  
A. many grounds                      B. much ground  
C. many ground                      D. much grounds
5. "What does Roger Brown do for a living?" "He's one of the most successful  
\_\_\_\_\_ in the city."  
A. newspaper reporter                      B. newspaper's reporters  
C. newspaper's reporter                      D. newspaper reporters
6. We do not do much \_\_\_\_\_ with him.  
A. commerce                      B. businesses                      C. business                      D. enterprise
7. The house built of \_\_\_\_\_ was once used as a warehouse.  
A. stone                      B. stones                      C. a stone                      D. some stones
8. Some \_\_\_\_\_ were seen loafing in the street.  
A. youth                      B. few youth                      C. more youth                      D. youths
9. This will please \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. the eyes                      B. eyes                      C. the eye                      D. people's eyes
10. Hainan province has \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. too many summers                      B. too much summer  
C. long summer                      D. much summer
11. Please give \_\_\_\_\_ to what he has to say.

- A. a ear            B. ears            C. your ears            D. ear
12. He was not \_\_\_\_\_ to admit his mistakes in public.  
A. man enough    B. enough man    C. a man enough    D. enough a man
13. The soup tastes of \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. onions            B. an onion            C. the onion            D. onion
14. The play was produced before \_\_\_\_\_ all over the country.  
A. a large audience            B. large audiences  
C. large audience            D. the large audiences
15. He is \_\_\_\_\_ than his brother.  
A. more sportsman            B. more of a sportsman  
C. sportsman enough            D. enough of a sportsman
16. That man is not \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. enough scholar            B. much of a scholar  
C. much scholar            D. enough of scholar
17. He is \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. something of a poet            B. anything of a poet  
C. something of the poet            D. anything of the poet
18. My father never gave me \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. some advice    B. advice            C. an advice            D. the advice
19. I will give \_\_\_\_\_ to finish it.  
A. two week's time            B. two weeks time  
C. two weeks' time            D. two-weeks time
20. The police \_\_\_\_\_ caught the burglar.  
A. has            B. have            C. is            D. are
21. \_\_\_\_\_ dollars will go into the building.  
A. Some millions            B. Millions of  
C. A million of            D. Million of
22. He wrote a \_\_\_\_\_ report.  
A. two-thousand-words            B. two-thousands-words  
C. two-thousands-word            D. two-thousand-word
23. The \_\_\_\_\_ held a strike.  
A. woman workers    B. women workers    C. women worker    D. woman worker
24. The hurricane caused \_\_\_\_\_ to the crops.  
A. many damage    B. much damages    C. few damages    D. much damage
25. Every means \_\_\_\_\_ tried but without much result.

- A. have been      B. has been      C. are      D. is
26. These damages \_\_\_\_\_ not yet been paid.  
A. have      B. has      C. is      D. are
27. That damage \_\_\_\_\_ repaired long ago.  
A. has been      B. were      C. have been      D. was
28. His politics \_\_\_\_\_ rather conservative.  
A. have      B. has      C. are      D. is
29. To the dinner party all her \_\_\_\_\_ were invited.  
A. relation      B. relations      C. a relation      D. the relations
30. Saying only that she was \_\_\_\_\_, she left without giving her name.  
A. a friend of Mary      B. a friend Mary  
C. a friend of Mary's      D. friend of a Mary
31. The bread and butter \_\_\_\_\_ delicious.  
A. have      B. has      C. are      D. is
32. The food and the textile industry \_\_\_\_\_ mainly on agriculture for raw material.  
A. depend      B. depends      C. has depended      D. have depended
33. What you eat and how much you exercise \_\_\_\_\_ two important factors in weight loss program.  
A. were      B. was      C. are      D. is
34. Not only the students but also their teacher \_\_\_\_\_ at the meeting.  
A. was present      B. were present  
C. have been presented      D. has been present
35. There \_\_\_\_\_ little change in the patient's condition since he was moved to the intensive care unit.  
A. have been      B. has been      C. are      D. is
36. Only about one out of twelve of the young men and women of this country \_\_\_\_\_ a college education.  
A. receive      B. receives  
C. have received      D. have been received
37. The hostess together with the guest of honor \_\_\_\_\_ comfortably in the living room.  
A. was seated      B. seated      C. were seated      D. were seating
38. Either Carol or Grace \_\_\_\_\_ to the recital, but one of them has to stay home.  
A. is coming      B. are coming      C. will coming      D. have come
39. Beijing is a \_\_\_\_\_ from my home town.

- A. twenty-four hours' journey      B. twenty-four's hour journey  
 C. twenty-four hour journey      D. twenty-four hour's journey
40. One has to be \_\_\_\_\_ to get its young.  
 A. in a den of tiger's      B. in the den of the tiger  
 C. in a tiger's den      D. in a tiger den

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. A    2. A    3. A    4. B    5. B    6. A    7. A    8. A    9. A    10. A  
 11. A    12. B    13. A    14. B    15. B    16. B    17. B    18. D    19. C    20. B

### 单项语法坡度练习

1. B    2. C    3. D    4. A    5. D    6. A    7. D    8. B    9. D    10. D  
 11. B    12. A    13. C    14. D    15. B    16. B    17. B    18. B    19. D    20. D

### 模拟自测题

1. D    2. C    3. C    4. A    5. D    6. C    7. A    8. D    9. B    10. B  
 11. C    12. A    13. D    14. A    15. B    16. B    17. B    18. A    19. C    20. B  
 21. B    22. D    23. B    24. D    25. B    26. A    27. A    28. C    29. B    30. C  
 31. D    32. A    33. C    34. A    35. B    36. B    37. A    38. A    39. D    40. C

## 第二章

# 冠 词

冠词是一种虚词，本身不能独立使用，只能放在一个名词前帮助说明这个名词的含义。英语中的冠词有两种：定冠词(the definite article)和不定冠词(the indefinite article)。定冠词只有 the 一种形式，表示特指，与指示代词 this, that 同源，有这个、那个、这些、那些的意思。在辅音前读[ð]，在元音前读[i]。例如：

Show me the book(s) you've just bought.

你把刚买的那(几)本书拿给我看看。

不定冠词与数词 one 同源，是一个的意思，与可数名词的单数形式连用，表示某类人或东西中的一个。不定冠词有两种形式 a 和 an, a 用在以辅音开头的词前，an 则用在以元音开头的词前。

## I. 语法精要讲解

### 1) 一般要点精讲

#### (1) 定冠词

① 用在表示特指的人或物的名词前(熟知或心照不宣的人或物)。例如：

Kate is in the garden. 凯特在花园里。(the garden of the house)

Where are the other students? 别的学生在哪里?(the students both of us know)

② 用在第二次提到的人或物的名词前。例如：

He has ever had a car, but the car was stolen last year.

他以前有辆车，但是去年被偷了。

③ 用在表示独一无二的或被认为惟一东西的名词前。例如：

the sky 天空

the equator 赤道

the universe 宇宙

the world 世界

但是，在此类用法中，部分表示阴、晴、雨、雪等的名词前，也可用不定冠词。

例如：

a blue sky 蔚蓝的天空

a starry sky 星光灿烂的夜空

a cloudless sky 晴朗的天

a sullen sky 阴沉的天空

④ 用在由短语或从句修饰的名词前或用在被限定意味较强的定语(尤其是定语从句和 of 短语结构)修饰的名词前。例如:

The key to the door is lost. 门的钥匙丢了。

the history of China 中国历史 (比较 Chinese history)

The restaurant where I had my dinner yesterday is very inconvenient. 昨晚我去吃饭的那家餐馆很不好。

⑤ 用在形容词、副词最高级或序数词前; only, main, sole, same 修饰名词时, 前面也要用定冠词。例如:

The darkest cloud has a silver lining. 山重水复处必是柳暗花明。

He is the first man to come. 他是第一个来的人。

This is the only road to the school. 这是通往学校惟一的路。

That's the main thing. 那是主要的事情。

He is the sole survivor. 他是惟一的幸存者。

The same cause produce the same effects. 种瓜得瓜, 种豆得豆。

但在下列句子中, 序数词前不用定冠词:

We are first cousins. 我们是亲表兄弟。

He is second to none in skill. 他的技术比谁都高超。

其他如: at first glance, on second thoughts, first prize, first secretary 等。

⑥ 用在单数名词前表示属类。例如:

The whale is in danger of becoming extinct. 鲸有灭绝的危险。

The rose smells sweet. 玫瑰花香四溢。

⑦ 用在复数名词前表示某类人的总称或集体中的任何一个或多个。例如:

The times have changed. 时代变了。

The years went by. 一年又一年。(光阴荏苒)

⑧ 用在表示海洋、河流、山脉、群岛、海湾海峡、某些国家、某些组织机构、报纸、书籍、会议、条约、信仰等名词前。例如:

the Atlantic 大西洋

the Thames 泰晤士河

the Alps 阿尔卑斯山脉

the East Indies 东印度群岛

the Persian Gulf 波斯湾

the Taiwan Straits 台湾海峡

the United States 美国

the Senate 参议院(美国)

The Times 《泰晤士报》

the Spectator 《观察家》

the Treaty of Nanjing 《南京条约》

the national anthem 国歌

下列这类名词前不用冠词:

Life 《生活》周刊

Time 《时代》周刊





She was a Brown. 她是布朗家的人。

⑥ 用在某些数目的表示法中。例如:

a dozen 一打                      a couple 一对                      an eight 1/8

a quarter 1/4                      a great many 许多

## 2) 特别要点精讲

### (1) 定冠词

① 用在某些形容词前, 使该形容词名词化, 表示这一类人或者事物。其数的含义要视该词所代表的东西而定。例如:

the rich 富人

the poor 穷人(复数)

the true 真(的东西)

the false 假(的东西)(单数)

② 用在逢十的年份前, 表示某世纪中的年代。例如:

in the 1980s 在 20 世纪 80 年代

③ 用在表示人体某一部位的名词前。例如:

I took the little girl by the hand and patted her on the head.(=I took the little girl's hand and patted her head.) 我拉住那个小女孩的手, 拍拍她的脑袋。

④ 用在一些计量单位的名词前。例如:

Apples are sold by the pound. 苹果是按磅出售的。

比较: These apples are 50 cents a pound. 这些苹果 50 美分一磅。

某些固定搭配中, 要求用定冠词。常见的有:

at the same time 同时

all the year round 一年到头

the man in the street 普通人

all the better 更好

beside the question 离题

by the way 顺便说一句

in the air 在空中

in the dark 在暗处

in the distance 在远处

in the future 在将来

in the morning 在上午

in the right 有道理

in the end 最终

in the open 在露天

in the sun 在阳光下

on the air 在广播中, 流传

on the alert 警惕

on the average 平均

on the contrary 相反

on the increase 正在增长

on the decrease 下降

on the part of 在……方面

on the other hand 另一方面

on the spot 当场

on the whole 总的来说

on the way 在路上

on the job 忙碌着

out of the question 不可能的

to the point 切题

act the lord 逞威风

carry the day 获胜

keep the house 居家不外出

play the fool 做傻事

put to the test 试验

set the fashion 标新立异

take the consequences 承担后果

⑤ 当专有名词由几个普通名词或带有形容词修饰语的名词词组构成时,通常要用定冠词。例如:

the Palace Museum 故宫博物院

the Red Square 红场

⑥ 中国极少数传统节日前通常要用定冠词。例如:

the Spring Festival 春节

the Lantern Festival 元宵节

⑦ the 用来圈定形容词从句的限定范围。例如:

He is one of the students who helps me. 他是帮助我的学生之一。

He is the one who helps me. 他就是帮助我的那个人。

第一句定语从句与 the students 一致,第二句定语从句与 the one 一致。

⑧ 定冠词的位置

定冠词通常位于名词或名词修饰语前,但放在 all, both, double, half, twice, three times 等词之后,名词之前。例如:

All the students in the class went out. 班里的所有学生都出去了。

## (2) 不定冠词

① 用在某些表示情绪的抽象名词前,表示“一种,一类”等;也用在其他抽象名词前,表示“一种,这种,那种”等;还可用在复数抽象名词前表示单一概念,或复数可数名词前表示一个整体概念。例如:

It's a shame to behave like that. 那样做事,简直是耻辱。

It's a pleasure for me to be with you. 跟你在一起,我非常高兴。

② 用在某些物质名词前,表示“一阵,一份,一类,一场”等。例如:

I was caught in a heavy rain yesterday. 昨天我遇上了一阵大雨。

I'd like to have an ice-cream. 我想来一份冰淇淋。

③ 表示“每一”,相当于 each 或 per。例如:

以重量定价格: 60 p a/per kilo 1(每)公斤 60 磅

以时间定速度: 80 km an/per hour 1(每)小时 80 公里

距离 / 燃料消耗: 40 miles a/per gallon 1(每)加仑 40 公里

频率 / 时间: twice a/per day 一(每)天两次

④ 与某些表示疾病的名词连用。例如:

have a headache 头疼    have a cold 感冒    have a sore throat 嗓子疼

⑤ 用在某些固定短语中。例如:

at a blow 一举,一下子

as a matter of fact 其实

all of a sudden 突然

as a rule 照例,通常

at a loss 不知所措

at a discount 打折扣

at a distance 在远处	for a while 一会儿
in a word 简言之	in a hurry 匆忙地
in a sense 在某种意义上	have a try 试一试
have a word with 同……谈谈	have a mind to do sth. 想做某事
keep an eye on 照看, 留意	make a living 谋生, 糊口
take a bath 洗澡	take a walk 散步
take a break 休息	take an interest in 有兴趣
take a chance 冒险	take (make) a bow 鞠躬
make a fuss 大惊小怪	lend a hand 帮助

### ⑥ 不定冠词的位置

不定冠词常位于名词或名词修饰语前。但要注意不定冠词与部分形容词的搭配使用。

A. 位于下列形容词之后: such, what, many, half. 例如:

I have never seen such an animal. 我从来没见过这种动物。

Many a man is fit for the job. 许多人适合这项工作。

B. 当名词前的形容词被副词 as, so, too, how, however, enough 修饰时, 不定冠词应放在形容词之后。例如:

It is as pleasant a day as I have ever spent. 这是我度过的最快乐的一天。

so short a time 如此短的一段时间

too long a distance 如此长的一段距离

C. quite, rather 与单数名词连用, 冠词放在其后。但当 rather, quite 前仍有形容词, 不定冠词放其前后均可。例如:

quite a lot 很多

D. 在 as, though 引导的让步状语从句中, 当表语为形容词修饰的名词时, 不定冠词放在形容词后。例如:

Brave a man though he is, he trembles at the sight of snakes.

他尽管勇敢, 可见到蛇还是发抖。

E. 当名词被比较级形容词修饰时, 不定冠词通常置于比较级形容词之后。

冠词+普通名词表示类属, 一般有以下五种情况。

a. a(n)+单数可数名词。例如:

A tiger is a fierce animal. 虎是凶残的动物。

b. the+单数可数名词。例如:

The tiger is a fierce animal.

c. 零冠词+复数可数名词。例如:

Tigers are fierce animals.

d. 零冠词+不可数名词。例如:

Blood is thicker than water. 血浓于水。

Architecture is one of the fine arts. 建筑学是一门艺术。

不可数名词前面有描绘性定语时, 仍用零冠词。例如:

Raw rubber looks like milk. 生橡胶看起来像奶一样。

e. the+形容词。例如:

The old are apt to catch cold. 老人容易得感冒。

Don't ask her to do the impossible. 不要让她做不可能的事。

冠词+可数名词表示类属的几种表达方式的区别:

a(n)+单数可数名词, the+单数可数名词和零冠词+复数名词都可表示类属, 有时可以互换使用, 但是它们各自具有不同的含义, 在用法上也有差异。

a(n)+单数可数名词, 意为用一个具体的例子代表全类。

the+单数可数名词, 意为概括一类事物, 以区别另一类事物。

零冠词+复数可数名词, 意为概括一类的事物。

试比较:

同义 {	A tiger is a fierce animal. (任何一只虎)
	Tigers are fierce animals. (所有的虎)

同样, 冠词+单数可数名词也可表达一类事物的全部, 例如:

**The tiger** is threatened with extinction.

(种属: 虎有灭种的危险。)

### (3) 零冠词

零冠词是一个语法概念, 即不用冠词の場合, 表示名词的泛指或一般概念。

① 复数可数名词表示泛指时, 一般不用冠词。例如:

Girls do better than boys at school. 在学校里女生比男生表现好。

② 不可数名词表示泛指时, 一般不用冠词。例如:

Butter makes people fat. 黄油使人发胖。

③ 专有名词前一般不用冠词。例如:

Tom lives in London. 汤姆住在伦敦。

He studies in Beijing University. 他在北京大学读书。

④ 季节名词前不用冠词。例如:

Winter is coming. 冬天到了。

但是: I'll never forget the winter of last year. 我永远不会忘记去年的冬天。(特指)

⑤ 法定节日前不用冠词。例如:

National Day 国庆节

New Year's Day 元旦

⑥ 球类运动、棋类游戏前不用冠词。例如：

play volleyball (football) 打排球(踢足球) play chess 下棋

⑦ 语言名词前不用冠词。但特指某民族的语言时，则要用定冠词。例如：

**English** is an international language.

**The English** language is an international one. 英语是一门国际性语言。

⑧ 一日三餐前不用冠词。例如：

When will **lunch** be ready? 午餐什么时候准备好？

但表达有限定范围的特指时，表达三餐(breakfast, lunch, supper)的名词前加定冠词 the。例如：

**The lunch** we are having was prepared by mother. 我们正在吃的午餐是妈妈准备的。  
(特指)

⑨ 当表示惟一的头衔、职位或身份的名词用作表语、补语或同位语时，不用冠词。  
例如：

He became **monitor** of our class. 他当了我们的班长。(作表语)

They elected him **president** of the society. 他们选他当协会主席。(作补语)

John, **father** of Tom, is also interested in this plan.

约翰，汤姆的父亲，对这个计划也感兴趣。(作同位语)

但表达相同意义的名词作主语时需加冠词 the，例如：

**The director** wants to see you. 导演要见你。

⑩ 当 father, teacher, nurse, cook 表示“我(们)的爸爸 / 老师 / 护士 / 厨师”等的意思时，不用冠词。例如：

**Father** bought me a gift for my birthday. 爸爸给我买了一个生日礼物。

**Teacher** was very pleased with my performance. 老师对我的表演很满意。

⑪ 两个密切相关的名词连用，有时用零冠词。其中有些已成为习惯用语。例如：

They became **husband and wife**. 他们成了夫妻。

**Father and son** were teachers. 父子都是老师。

(比较：The father and the son cannot agree on this matter.)

⑫ 某些固定用语中，不用冠词。例如：

after school 放学后

at random 随便地

at home 在家

at first 最初

at table 在吃饭

at last 最后

by car 乘汽车

by accident 碰巧

in bed 卧床

in face of 面对

in effect 实际上

in common 相同的

in person 亲自

in future 今后

in return 作为回报

in order of 以……的次序

in place of 取代

on fire 在燃烧

out of question 毫无疑问

catch fire 着火

make friends with 与……交友

with child 怀孕

set sail 起航

in hospital 住院

in sight of 看见

on foot 徒步

learn by heart 记忆

go to school 去上学

keep in mind 记在心上

send word 捎信

take root 扎根

take place 发生

⑬ 在形容词+of+表示身体部位的单数名词结构中,不用冠词。例如:

He is a stout man, red of **face**. 他脸色红润,非常健壮。

A middle-aged man, solid of **frame** and bright of **cheek**, was waving to her.

一位身材结实、容光焕发的中年人在向她招手。

另外,表示典型的身体部位前也不用定冠词。例如:

The dog ran away, with **tail** between its legs. 那只狗夹着尾巴逃走了。

She saw a man with bald **head** and pale **face**. 她看见一个头光秃、面苍白的人。

在单数名词变为物质名词或抽象名词时,不用冠词。例如:

He likes **rabbit** very much. 他很喜欢吃兔肉。

Don't care too much about **face**. 不要太爱面子。

The table is made of **pine**. 这张桌子是松木做的。

⑭ 在介词后表示抽象概念的名词前,不用冠词。例如:

She is at **university**. 她在大学读书。

He is still in **jail**. 他还在坐牢。

⑮ 在呼语中,常用零冠词。例如:

Poor fellow! 可怜的人儿!

Fat chance. 没门儿。

⑯ 表示某一范围之内或某一情况之中的有限类指。例如:

**Traffic** is heavy here. 这里的交通很拥挤。

**Wine** is very expensive there. 那里的酒很贵。

⑰ 泛指人类或男女。例如:

**Man** is mortal. 人固有一死。

**Man** should help and love each other. 人类应互助互爱。

**Woman** is frail. 女人是脆弱的。

⑱ 序数词前不用冠词的四种情况:

A. 序数词作副词用时,不用冠词。例如:

You should **first** read the questions before you answer them.

你做出回答之前，要先读这些问题。

**First** read fast to get a general idea. **Second** read in detail.

第一遍快读，读懂大意。第二遍读懂细节。

B. 序数词作名词用，表示“名次”等时，不用冠词。例如：

These bikes are all **firsts**. 这些自行车均是一流的。

但：He took **a first** in the match. 他在比赛中得了第一名。

C. 序数词和名词构成的复合形容词前不用冠词。例如：

They tried to get **first-hand** information. 他们试图获得第一手资料。

Don't buy **second-hand** car. 别买二手车。

D. 在有些序数词表示的街道名词前不用冠词。例如：

Twenty-First Street 第二十一街                  Sixth Avenue 第六街

⑨ 用于日期、月份、季节和节假日前。例如：

It's Monday today. 今天是星期一。

May is my favorite month. 五月是我最喜爱的月份。

Christmas is the time for family reunions. 圣诞节是全家团聚的日子。

## II. 学法指导

### • 定冠词用法小结口诀 •

有水无湖：海、洋、海湾、河等，都用 the；单个湖不用 the (但多个湖用 the)。

the Red Sea, the Pacific Ocean, the Persian Gulf, the Yangtze River

The Great Lakes (五大湖)；Lake Erie(伊利湖)。

有球无星：地球，月亮用 the；行星不用 the ( Mars, Venus)。

有山无峰：The Huangshan Mountain (黄山)用 the；Mount Everest (珠穆朗玛峰)；

Mount (or Mt.) Tai (泰山)不用 the。

有独无欧(偶)：独一无二的，the earth, the moon, the sun 用 the；

欧洲等七大洲不用 the。

(Europe, Africa, Asia, North America, South America, Antarctica, Oceania)

有(足)族无球(运动)：种族用 the: the Indians (印第安人)；球类运动不用 the (baseball, basketball)。

有文无章：历史性的文件用 the (the constitution(宪法))；小说等的章节不用 the (chapter one)。

学而不专：学校放在词组的前面时用 the (the University of Fudan)；专有名词放在



词组的前面时不用 the (Fudan University)。

### III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. What \_\_\_\_\_ awful weather! \_\_\_\_\_ rain hasn't stopped all day.

答案: /...The

提示: 第一个空,在感叹句中本应该用 an, 但此处 weather 为不可数名词; 第二个空表示特指。

译文: 多么恶劣的天气啊! 雨下了一整天都没有停。

2. He goes to \_\_\_\_\_ church every Sunday; \_\_\_\_\_ church he usually goes to has \_\_\_\_\_ seats for over \_\_\_\_\_ thousand.

答案: /...the.../...a

提示: 第一个空,由具体转为抽象的名词前一般不用定冠词。这时,名词所表示的不是具体的建筑物或事物,而是与这些建筑物或事物有关的情形或活动,或表示其用途或作用等。在此 go to church 表示去教堂祷告而 go to the church 则表示上那个教堂去了; 第二个空则是第二次提到表示特指; 第三个空则是复数可数名词表示泛指时一般不用冠词; 第四个空则是表示数词 1 000。

译文: 他每个星期天都去做礼拜, 他经常去的那家教堂可容纳上千人。

3. \_\_\_\_\_ wool is one of \_\_\_\_\_ chief exports of \_\_\_\_\_ Australia.

答案: /...the.../

提示: 第一个空是不可数名词表示泛指; 第二个空则是定冠词用于 one of + the + 名词结构中表示特指; 第三个空为专有名词前面一般不用冠词。

译文: 羊毛是澳大利亚主要的出口物之一。

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Indian tigers are \_\_\_\_\_ magnificent animals, but \_\_\_\_\_ Siberian tigers are even \_\_\_\_\_ finer beasts.

答案: /.../.../.../

提示: 此题属于零冠词的基本用法。

译文: 印度虎是一种美丽的动物, 西伯利亚虎是一种更美的动物。

5. — We had \_\_\_\_\_ fish and \_\_\_\_\_ chips for \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.

— That doesn't sound \_\_\_\_\_ very interesting lunch.

答案: /.../.../...a

提示: 此题属于零冠词和不定冠词的基本用法。

译文: 一我们中午吃鱼和薯条。

一那些东西听起来一点也不诱人。

6. Everywhere \_\_\_\_\_ man has cut down \_\_\_\_\_ forests in order to cultivate \_\_\_\_\_ ground, or to use \_\_\_\_\_ wood as \_\_\_\_\_ fuel or as \_\_\_\_\_ building material.

答案: /.../...the...the.../.../

提示: 第一个空表示泛指; 第二个空是复数可数名词表示泛指; 第三、四个空表示特指; 第五、六个空则表示泛指。

译文: 各地人们砍伐森林的目的要么是为了毁林造田, 要么是为了使用木材作为燃料或建筑材料。

7. \_\_\_\_\_ whale is \_\_\_\_\_ mammal, not \_\_\_\_\_ fish.

答案: A(The)...a...a

提示: 三个空均表示类属。

译文: 鲸是哺乳动物, 不是鱼类。

8. My uncle is \_\_\_\_\_ trader but he does \_\_\_\_\_ little farming with \_\_\_\_\_ help of his two sons.

答案: a...a...the

提示: 第一个空表示泛指“一”的概念; 第二个空是抽象名词表示泛指; 第三个空表示特指。

译文: 我叔叔是个商人, 但是他也在他两个儿子的帮助下做点农活。

9. They have gone into \_\_\_\_\_ woods to collect \_\_\_\_\_ firewood which they can sell at \_\_\_\_\_ market. Then they will use \_\_\_\_\_ money to buy \_\_\_\_\_ meat, \_\_\_\_\_ sugar and \_\_\_\_\_ few other things.

答案: the.../...the...the.../.../...a

提示: 第一个空表示特指; 第二个空是不可数名词表示泛指; 第三、四个空均表示特指; 第五、六个空均为不可数名词表示泛指; 第七个空则是固定搭配。

译文: 他们已经进入森林去搜集木材, 以便到市场上去卖钱, 然后再用这些钱来买肉、糖和其他的一些东西。

10. My cousin is studying at \_\_\_\_\_ university in \_\_\_\_\_ United Kingdom. He hopes to become \_\_\_\_\_ engineer. When he has passed \_\_\_\_\_ necessary examinations, he will probably get \_\_\_\_\_ job with \_\_\_\_\_ Government or with \_\_\_\_\_ commercial firm. He is studying \_\_\_\_\_ electrical engineering at \_\_\_\_\_ moment.

答案: a...the...an...the...a...the...a.../...the

提示: 第一个空是表示“某一”的概念, 用不定冠词; 第二个空是专有名词前需用定冠词; 第三个空表示成为一名工程师; 第四个空表示特指; 第五个空表示泛指“一”的概念; 第六个空也是专有名词前需用定冠词; 第七个空也表示泛指“一”的概念; 第

八个空是课程名称前不用冠词；第九个空是固定搭配。

译文：我表弟在英国的一所大学读书。他希望能成为一名工程师。当他通过了所必需的考试之后，他可能会在政府部门或商业公司找到一份工作。他现在在学习电子工程。

## IV. 考级阶梯性练习

### • 单项语法基础练习 •

1. We live within \_\_\_\_\_ easy reach of \_\_\_\_\_ river so we are fond of \_\_\_\_\_ fishing and \_\_\_\_\_ swimming. Whenever I get \_\_\_\_\_ chance, I go down to \_\_\_\_\_ river with \_\_\_\_\_ friend, and we spend \_\_\_\_\_ pleasant hour there.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ books lying on \_\_\_\_\_ table belong to \_\_\_\_\_ friend of mine.

3. Scientists hope to send \_\_\_\_\_ expedition to \_\_\_\_\_ Mars during \_\_\_\_\_ 1980s.

4. He is \_\_\_\_\_ expert in \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese history but he is also interested in \_\_\_\_\_ history of Japan.

5. Be careful! \_\_\_\_\_ current is particularly strong in this part of \_\_\_\_\_ river. There have been \_\_\_\_\_ number of deaths here during \_\_\_\_\_ past few years through \_\_\_\_\_ failures of \_\_\_\_\_ swimmers to estimate \_\_\_\_\_ strength of \_\_\_\_\_ current.

6. When \_\_\_\_\_ police inspector reached \_\_\_\_\_ scene of \_\_\_\_\_ accident, he made \_\_\_\_\_ note of \_\_\_\_\_ position of \_\_\_\_\_ vehicles and asked each of \_\_\_\_\_ drivers to make \_\_\_\_\_ statement as to \_\_\_\_\_ cause of \_\_\_\_\_ accident. In their statements, they both denied \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility and said that \_\_\_\_\_ other driver was to blame.

7. There was \_\_\_\_\_ storm last night so I stayed at \_\_\_\_\_ home and played \_\_\_\_\_ chess with my brother. He taught me \_\_\_\_\_ rules and I managed to win \_\_\_\_\_ third game after he had made \_\_\_\_\_ careless mistake.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ Thames, \_\_\_\_\_ Seine and \_\_\_\_\_ Rhine are \_\_\_\_\_ famous rivers.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ wool of which this suit is made comes from \_\_\_\_\_ Australian sheep.

10. He said he was \_\_\_\_\_ employee of \_\_\_\_\_ gas company and had come to

read \_\_\_\_\_ meter.

11. —I'd like to see \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Smith please.

—Do you mean \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Smith who works in the box office or \_\_\_\_\_ other Mr. Smith, the stage manager?

12. We're going to have \_\_\_\_\_ tea with \_\_\_\_\_ Smiths today, aren't we?

Shall we take \_\_\_\_\_ car?

13. It's \_\_\_\_\_ shame! There won't be another train for at least \_\_\_\_\_ hour.

14. They charge three pounds \_\_\_\_\_ day for \_\_\_\_\_ double-room in \_\_\_\_\_ hotel I mentioned.

15. We'd better go by \_\_\_\_\_ taxi—if we can get \_\_\_\_\_ taxi at such \_\_\_\_\_ hour as 2 a.m.

16. — Mr. Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ old customer and \_\_\_\_\_ honest man.

—Why do you say that? Has he been accused of \_\_\_\_\_ dishonesty?

17. If you go by \_\_\_\_\_ train you can have quite \_\_\_\_\_ comfortable journey, but make sure you get \_\_\_\_\_ express, not \_\_\_\_\_ train that stops at all the stations.

18. I see that your house is built of \_\_\_\_\_ wood. Are you insured against \_\_\_\_\_ fire?

19. \_\_\_\_\_ people think that \_\_\_\_\_ lead is \_\_\_\_\_ heaviest metal, but \_\_\_\_\_ gold is heavier.

20. It was \_\_\_\_\_ windy morning but they hired \_\_\_\_\_ boat and went for \_\_\_\_\_ sail along \_\_\_\_\_ coast. In \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ wind increased and they soon found themselves in \_\_\_\_\_ difficulties.

### • 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are a hardworking people.

A. Some Chinese    B. Chinese    C. The Chineses    D. The Chinese

2. Everyone of us has \_\_\_\_\_ machine; \_\_\_\_\_ machine is \_\_\_\_\_ brain.

A. a... a...the    B. a...the...the    C. the...a...a    D. a...a...a

3. John likes playing \_\_\_\_\_.

A. basketball    B. the basketball  
C. a basketball    D. basketballs

4. He has already worked for \_\_\_\_\_ hour.

A. the    B. a    C. an    D. /

5. My brother works in \_\_\_\_\_, but I'm not certain which one.

- A. a factory      B. factory      C. the factory      D. some factories
6. I've thrown away my old trousers. I'll have to buy \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. some new pair    B. a new one      C. some new ones    D. a new pair
7. When we saw his face, we knew \_\_\_\_\_ was bad.
- A. the news          B. some news      C. a news            D. news
8. We waited \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus.
- A. long time          B. a long time      C. some long time    D. the long time
9. Mary wants to become \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the secretary    B. secretary        C. a secretary        D. one secretary
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is very important in daily life.
- A. Honesty          B. The honesty      C. An honesty         D. Honest
11. John Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ honest man.
- A. one                B. an                C. the                D. a
12. She has never seen \_\_\_\_\_ small cafe.
- A. such a            B. so                C. a that             D. as
13. "What musical instrument do you play?"  
"\_\_\_\_\_."
- A. Piano             B. A piano          C. Pianos            D. The piano
14. I ordered \_\_\_\_\_ book on Mark Twain some time ago. \_\_\_\_\_ book hasn't arrived yet.
- A. a...The          B. the...A          C. a...A             D. the...The
15. They failed six times but they have made their minds to try \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. a seventh time    B. seven times      C. seventh time      D. the seventh time
16. We'll be \_\_\_\_\_ home tomorrow if you'd like to call.
- A. in                B. in the            C. at                 D. at the
17. "What do you want from the grocery store, Karen?"  
"Oh, I just need some toothpaste and \_\_\_\_\_."
- A. a little bit of other things      B. a couple of other things  
C. a few of some other things      D. some other little things or two
18. A young man cannot have \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. experience of world                B. experience of the world  
C. the experience of world            D. the experience of the world
19. Janet cannot drive yet, but she wants \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. her own car                        B. the car of her own  
C. a her own car                        D. a car of her own

20. Wooden houses \_\_\_\_\_ easily.  
 A. catch a fire      B. catch fire      C. catch the fire      D. catch fires

• 模拟自测题 •

1. On Sundays, we go to \_\_\_\_\_ to hear mass.  
 A. a church      B. the church      C. church      D. some church
2. “Where is he?” “He’s sitting \_\_\_\_\_ of the classroom.”  
 A. in the front      B. on the front      C. in front      D. in a front
3. What do you usually do after \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. the class      B. class      C. the classes      D. classes
4. Sarabeth had spent \_\_\_\_\_ studying.  
 A. the whole day      B. the all day  
 C. altogether a day      D. entirely a day
5. Mr. Brown must be over forty for he’s grown \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. gray hairs      B. a gray hair      C. gray hair      D. a lot of gray hair
6. I’m busy now; ask him to see me \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
 A. the other      B. some other      C. other      D. no other
7. It took me \_\_\_\_\_ hour and \_\_\_\_\_ half to finish \_\_\_\_\_ work.  
 A. a...a...a      B. an...a...a      C. an...a...the      D. an...a.../
8. Please go to \_\_\_\_\_ to pick up your ID card (身份证).  
 A. third window      B. the window three  
 C. window third      D. the third window
9. James Watt invented \_\_\_\_\_ steam engine.  
 A. a      B. the      C. /      D. the
10. The policeman caught him by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. an arm      B. the arm      C. his arms      D. the arms
11. The monitor spoke with \_\_\_\_\_ which inspired us all.  
 A. an enthusiasm      B. the enthusiasm      C. enthusiasm      D. his enthusiasm
12. I haven’t seen him \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. for a time      B. for the time      C. for a lot of time      D. for a long time
13. She is as \_\_\_\_\_ as you can meet in Hollywood.  
 A. beautiful girl      B. beautiful a girl      C. beautiful      D. the beautiful girl
14. He used to be a teacher till he turned \_\_\_\_\_ writer.  
 A. a      B. an      C. /      D. the

15. He has \_\_\_\_\_. He doesn't even know how to calculate.  
A. no brain      B. not brains      C. not a brain      D. not the brain
16. She looks best in \_\_\_\_\_ of that color.  
A. dressing      B. a dress      C. dress      D. the dress
17. They come to see us at least \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. once the year      B. once a year  
C. one time the year      D. one time in one year
18. "These shirts suit you."  
"Would you please show me \_\_\_\_\_?"  
A. white one's      B. white one      C. the white one      D. one the white
19. Does Louisa like \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. playing violin      B. to play violin  
C. playing the violin      D. to playing violin
20. The workers in this factory are paid \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. by an hour      B. by the hour      C. by hours      D. by hour
21. January is \_\_\_\_\_ first month of the year.  
A. a      B. /      C. an      D. the
22. \_\_\_\_\_ to be taken good care of.  
A. Young are      B. Young is      C. The young is      D. The young are
23. The canal extends five hundred miles \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. from south to north      B. from the south to the north  
C. from the south to north      D. from southern to northern
24. Later, the chance to enter \_\_\_\_\_ came and he took it.  
A. into college      B. to college      C. into the college      D. college
25. Have you ever sailed across \_\_\_\_\_ Channel?  
A. English      B. an English      C. the English      D. England
26. This is \_\_\_\_\_ Nanjing.  
A. second time I have been to      B. the second time of my being  
C. the second time I have been      D. the second time I have been to
27. My neighbor is a photographer; let's ask him for \_\_\_\_\_ about color films.  
A. some advices      B. advice      C. the advice      D. an advice
28. I had \_\_\_\_\_ very bad night, I didn't sleep \_\_\_\_\_ wink.  
A. a...the      B. the...a      C. a...a      D. /.../
29. You will get \_\_\_\_\_ shock if you touch \_\_\_\_\_ live wire with that screwdriver.

- A. a.../                      B. /.../                      C. a... the                      D. /... the
30. Now I'm on \_\_\_\_\_ diet. I'm trying to lose \_\_\_\_\_ weight.  
A. a.../                      B. the... a                      C. /... the                      D. a... a
31. He looked at me with \_\_\_\_\_ horror when I explained that I was \_\_\_\_\_ double agent.  
A. /...a                      B. the.../                      C. a.../                      D. a... a
32. I want an assistant with \_\_\_\_\_ little knowledge of French and \_\_\_\_\_ experience of office routine.  
A. the.../                      B. the... an                      C. a.../                      D. a... an
33. You mean you had \_\_\_\_\_ nightmare. Anyway, dinosaur didn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ meat.  
A. /.../                      B. a.../                      C. /...a                      D. the... a
34. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Jones called while you were out ( neither of us knows this man ).  
He was in \_\_\_\_\_ very bad temper.  
A. /...a                      B. A.../                      C. The...the                      D. A...a
35. I probably know him \_\_\_\_\_ but not \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. by the sight, by name                      B. by a sight, by name  
C. by sight, by name                      D. by the sight, by the name
36. I read \_\_\_\_\_ story. It is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting story.  
A. a...an                      B. a...a                      C. the... the                      D. /...an
37. Britain is \_\_\_\_\_ European country and China is \_\_\_\_\_ Asian country.  
A. an...an                      B. a...a                      C. a...an                      D. an...a
38. \_\_\_\_\_ China is \_\_\_\_\_ old country with \_\_\_\_\_ long history.  
A. The...an...a                      B. The...a...a                      C. /...an...the                      D. /...an...a
39. \_\_\_\_\_ elephant is bigger than \_\_\_\_\_ horse.  
A. /.../                      B. an...a                      C. An...a                      D. /...the
40. We always have \_\_\_\_\_ rice for \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.  
A. /.../                      B. the.../                      C. /... a                      D. the...the

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. /...a.../.../...a...the...a...a                      2. The...the...a  
3. an.../...the                      4. an...the...the



5. The...the...a...the.../...the...the...the

6. the...the...the...a...the...the...the...a...the...the...the...the

7. a.../.../...the...the...a

8. The...the...the.../

9. The.../

10. an...the...the

11. /.../...the

12. /...the...a

13. a...an

14. a...a...the

15. /...a...an

16. an...an.../

17. /...a...an...a

18. /.../

19. /.../...the.../

20. a...a...a...the...the...the.../

### 单项语法坡度练习

1. D    2. B    3. A    4. C    5. A    6. D    7. A    8. B    9. C    10. A

11. B    12. A    13. D    14. A    15. A    16. C    17. B    18. D    19. D    20. B

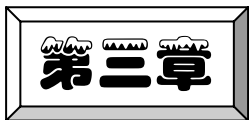
### 模拟自测题

1. C    2. A    3. B    4. A    5. A    6. B    7. C    8. D    9. C    10. B

11. C    12. D    13. B    14. C    15. A    16. D    17. B    18. C    19. C    20. B

21. D    22. D    23. A    24. D    25. C    26. D    27. B    28. C    29. C    30. A

31. A    32. C    33. B    34. D    35. C    36. A    37. C    38. D    39. C    40. A



# 代 词

代词是用于代替名词并相当于名词的词。大多数代词具有名词或形容词的功能。

## I. 语法精要讲解

### 1) 一般要点精讲

#### (1) 人称代词

使用人称代词时应注意到人称、数和格的变化。

##### A. 人称变化。

英语中将人称代词分为三类，即第一人称(我，我们)，第二人称(你，你们)，第三人称(他，她，它，他们，它们)。使用不同的人称代词作主语时，句子的谓语动词应使用不同形式。例如：

**I am from the state of California.** 我来自加利福尼亚州。

**We are from the state of California.** 我们来自加利福尼亚州。

##### B. 数的变化。

a. 人称代词本身有单复数的变化。例如：

**She is one of the most beautiful girls in the village.**

她是村子里最漂亮的女孩子之一。(单数)

**They have never been to any foreign countries.** 他们从没有去过外国。(复数)

b. 当主语人称代词为第三人称单数时，句中谓语动词应随主语有相应的变化。例如：

**I come from a totally different country.** 我来自于一个完全不同的国家。(第一人称)

**He comes from a totally different country.** 他来自于一个完全不同的国家。(第三人称)

##### C. 格的变化

人称代词有主格、宾格之分。前者可单独作为主语使用，后者可以作为动词或介词的宾语使用。例如：

**He comes from a totally different country.** 他来自于一个完全不同的国家。(he 为主格)

He is talking on and on, I really couldn't stand it.

他还在喋喋不休地讲，我真是受不了了。(it 为宾格)

## (2) 物主代词

根据用法的不同，物主代词常被分为两大类：形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词。

### ① 形容词性物主代词。

形容词性物主代词有 **my, our, your, his, her, its, their** 等。这类代词通常放在被修饰的名词前。

**My book is on the table.** 我的书在桌子上。

**You can use my computer while I am away.** 我不在的时候你可以用我的电脑。

### ② 名词性物主代词。

名词性的物主代词在用法上相当于省略了中心名词的's 属格结构，其后不能接名词。例如：**The cap is Jack's.** 划线部分的意思就是 **Jack's cap**。

A. 名词性物主代词的句法功能。

a. 作主语。例如：

**May I use your pen? Yours works better.** 我可以用一下你的笔吗？你的好用一些。

**His is a light and spacious room.** 他的房间宽敞明亮。

b. 作宾语。例如：

**I love my motherland as much as you love yours.**

我爱我的祖国就像你爱你的祖国那么深。

**Do you prefer his or mine?** 你更喜欢他的还是我的？

c. 作介词宾语。例如：

**You should interpret what I said in my sense of the word, not in yours.**

你应该根据我的意思来翻译，而不是根据你的。

**Best to you and yours(= your family) from me and mine(=my family).**

我和我的家人向你和你的家人问好。

d. 作主语补足语。例如：

**That room is hers.** 那个房间是她的。

**This is Lee's room, not yours.** 这是莉的房间，不是你的。

B. 名词性物主代词的双重所有格的使用。

物主代词不可与 **a, an, this, that, these, those, some, any, several, no, each, every, such, another, which** 等词一起前置修饰一个名词，而必须用双重所有格。其结构为：**a, an, this, that + 名词 + of + 名词性物主代词**。

**A friend of mine is going to Berlin.** 我的一个朋友打算去柏林。

**This is no fault of yours.** 这不是你的错。

When shall we hold that meeting of ours? 我们什么时候组织自己的会议?

### (3) 反身代词

反身代词的三种句法功能。

A. 作宾语。例如:

Please help yourself to some fish! 请吃些鱼吧!

You must not absent yourself from the meeting. 开会的时候你不许缺席。

B. 作表语。例如:

He is never affected and he is always himself.

他从不受影响, 他总是保持着自己的本性。

I am feeling myself again now. 现在我又恢复了健康。

C. 作同位语。例如:

The thing itself is not important. 事情本身不重要。

I wouldn't do it myself. 我不会亲自去做的。

### (4) 相互代词

① 相互代词的用法辨异。

each other 和 one another 为相互代词。each other 表达两者之间的相互关系, one another 则表达三者或三者以上之间的相互关系, 它们在句中通常作为介词或动词的宾语。例如:

It is easy to see that the people of different cultures have always copied each other.

不同文化中的人总是相互借鉴, 这很常见。

All people in the same country must care for each other, and love and help each other.

同一国家的人应该相互关心, 彼此友爱, 并互相帮助。

② 相互代词所有格的构成。

构成相互代词的所有格时, 可以直接在其后加-'s。例如:

They are familiar with each other's habits. 他们对彼此的习惯很熟悉。

We should point out one another's shortcomings. 我们应该指出彼此的不足。

### (5) 指示代词

① 指示代词的句法功能。

指示代词有 this, that, these, those, such, same 等。在句中通常充当下列成分:

A. 作定语。例如:

When did you buy these books? 你什么时候买的这些书?

It was such a lovely day. 那是很晴朗的一天。

B. 作宾语。例如:

I like this better than that. 我喜欢这个胜过于那个。

I don't say no to that. 我没有对那件事表示否定。

There is no fear of that. 那没有什么好怕的。

C. 作表语。例如:

My point is this. 我的观点是这样的。

Our view are the same. 我们的看法一样。

D. 作主语。例如:

This is the way to do it. 这是完成它的方法。

This gives us rest, and that gives us energy.

这个给我们休息, 那个给我们精力。

I may have hurt his feelings, but such was not my wish.

我可能伤害了他的感情, 但这不是我的本意。

### (6) 疑问代词

① 疑问代词在句中起名词的作用, 用来构成疑问句。常见的疑问代词有下列几个: who, whom, whose 指人, what 指物, which 既可指人又可指物。

② 疑问代词在句中应位于谓语动词之前, 没有词性的变化, 除 who 之外也没有格的变化。what, which, whose 还可作限定词。试比较:

Whose are these books on the desk? 桌上的书是谁的? (疑问代词作表语)

What was the directional flow of the U. S. territorial expansion?

美国的领土扩张是朝哪个方向进行的?

Whose books are these on the desk? 桌上的书是谁的? (疑问代词作限定词)

What events led to most of the east of the Mississippi River becoming part of the United States? 什么事件使密西西比河以东的大部分土地归属于美国? (疑问代词作限定词)

### (7) 关系代词

① 关系代词用来引导定语从句。它代表先行词, 同时在从句中充当一定的句子成分。例如:

The girl to whom I spoke is my cousin. 跟我讲话的姑娘是我表妹。

(该句中 whom 既代表先行词 the girl, 又在从句中作介词 to 的宾语。)

② 关系代词有主格、宾格和属格之分, 有指人或指物之分。在限定性定语从句中, that 可指人也可指物, 例如:

This is the pencil whose point is broken.

这就是那个折了尖的铅笔。(whose 指物, 在限定性定语从句中作定语。)

He came back for the book which he had forgotten.

他回来取他落下的书。(which 指物, 在限定性定语从句中作宾语, 可以省略。)

③ 关系代词 which 的先行词可以是一个句子。例如:

He said he saw me there, which was a lie. 他说在那儿看到了我, 纯属谎言。

④ 关系代词 **that** 在从句中作宾语或表语时可省略。例如:

I've forgotten much of the Latin I once knew. 我过去懂拉丁语, 现在大多忘了。

He's changed. He's not the man he was. 他变化很大, 已不是过去的他了。

⑤ 当先行词被 **such** 或 **the same** 修饰, 或先行词本身是 **the same** 时, 多选用关系代词 **as**, 表示“与……一样”。例如:

No one will believe such stories as he told. 没有人会相信他讲的这些故事。

This is the same watch as I have lost. 这块表和我丢的那块一样。

### (8) 不定代词

常用的不定代词有 **all, both, every, each, either, neither, more, little, few, much, many, another, other, some, any, one, no** 以及 **something, anything, everything, somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, nothing, nobody, no one, none, everybody, everyone** 等。

① 不定代词的功能。

除 **every** 和 **no** 外, 不定代词既可用作名词, 也可用作形容词。**every** 和 **no** 在句中只能起形容词作用, 在句中作定语。例如:

I have no idea about it. 对此我没有意见。

② 不定代词的用法。

A. 表示双数概念的代词。

a. **both** 都

a) **both** 与复数动词连用, 但 **both... and...** 可与单数名词连用。

b) **both** 可作同位语, 在句中常置于行为动词前、**be** 动词之后。如果助动词或情态动词后面的实义动词省去, 则位于助动词或情态动词之前。例如:

— Who can speak Japanese? 谁能说日语?

— We both can. 我们俩都可以。

b. **neither** 都不

**neither** 作主语时, 谓语动词用单数。作定语时, **neither** 与单数名词连用。但 **neither...nor...** 结构用作并列连词, 可与复数名词连用。该结构用于连接并列主语时, 其谓语动词单复数形式的确定应采用“就近原则”。另外, 也可用于下列句型, 避免重复。例如:

She can't speak French, neither (can) he. 她不会说法语, 他也不会。

Neither he nor I am a student any more. 他和我都已不再是学生了。

B. 表示三个或三个以上数目的代词 **all**。

**all** 的单复数由它所修饰或指代的名词的单复数决定。**all** 通常不与可数名词单数连用, 如不说 **all the book**, 而说 **the whole book**。但 **all** 可与表时间的可数名词单数连用, 如 **all day, all night, all the year**; 不过习惯上不说 **all hour, all century**。另外, **all** 还

可以与一些特殊的单数名词连用, 如 **all China, all the city, all my life, all the way.**

C. 表示不确定数量的代词。

a. **none** 无

a) **none** 作主语, 多与 **of** 构成短语 **none of**。在回答中, **none** 可单独使用。例如:  
**Are there any pictures on the wall? None.** 墙上有图片吗? 没有。

b) **none** 作主语, 谓语动词单复数均可。但如果作表语, 其单复数应该与表语一致。  
例如:

**It is none of your business.** 跟你不相干。

b. **few** 一些, 少数

**few** 作主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式, 多用于肯定句。

c. **some** 一些

a) 可与复数名词及不可数名词连用。

b) 作“某一”解时, 也可与单数名词连用, 此时其意思相当于 **a certain**。例如:  
**You will be sorry for this some day.** 总有一天, 你会为这件事后悔的。

**A certain (some) person has seen you break the rule.** 有人看见你违反了规定。

d. **any** 一些

a) **any** 多用于否定句、疑问句或条件状语从句中。

b) 当句中含有任何的意思时, **any** 可用于肯定句。例如:

**Here are three novels. You may read any.** 这三本小说。你可任读一本。

e. **ones** 一些

**ones** 必须与形容词连用。如果替代名词时无形容词在前修饰, 则换用 **some, any,** 而不用 **ones**。例如:

— **Have you bought any rulers?** 你买了些直尺吗?

— **Yes, I've bought some.** 是的, 我买了些。

— **Have you bought any rulers?** 你买了些直尺吗?

— **Yes, I've bought some cheap ones.** 是的, 我买了些便宜的。

## 2) 特殊要点精讲

### (1) **it** 的用法

① **it** 用作代词。

A. 作为人称代词使用(代替上文中出现过的人或事物)。例如:

**There is a new BMW under the big tree. It belongs to the head of their company.**  
那棵大树下有一辆新“宝马”。那是他们公司老总的。

**Look at the ox over there. It looks so strong.** 看那边那头牛。它看起来真壮。

B. 作为前指代词使用(代替前文中出现的一个从句或句子)。例如:

**If you overfulfil your plan ahead of time, it is a credit to you.**

如果你提前超额完成你的计划，这对你是一个荣誉。

The veteran worker had made another valuable invention. How wonderful it is!

那个经验丰富的工人又做出了一项有价值的发明。真棒啊！

C. 作无人称代词(用于代替时间、天气、距离、事物的概况等)。例如：

It is the Mid-Autumn Festival today. 今天是中秋节。

— What is it like today? 今天天气怎么样？

— It is rather chilly. 很冷。

It is only a night's journey to my home by train. 坐火车去我家只有一夜的行程。

How is it with the sick man? 那个病人现在怎么样了？

D. 作指示代词(用于指代被谈到的人或事物)。例如：

— Who is it? 谁？

— It's me. 是我。

— Who is there? 谁在那里？

— It is the teachers having a meeting. 是在开会的老师。

— Why are so many people over there? 为什么那边那么多人？

— It must be our sportsmen giving a display. 肯定是我们的运动员在表演吧。

② it 用作先行词。

这种词在句中通常是作为形式主语或形式宾语出现的，此时，真正的主语或宾语会在句中稍后的位置出现。

It is no good reading without thorough comprehension.

阅读但是不深入理解，这样不好。(it 作形式主语，真正的主语是后面的 v-ing 短语)

I took it for granted that he would fulfill the task.

我理所当然地认为他会完成任务。(it 作形式宾语，真正的宾语是后面的 that 从句)

It is not so easy for him to finish the task in such a short time.

对他来说，在这么短的时间里完成这个工作不容易。(it 做形式主语，真正的主语是后面的动词不定式短语)

③ it 用来表示强调。

it 多用于强调结构中作先行主语用。这种结构中能置于 it is 后被强调位置的通常是句子的主语、宾语或句中的状语。例如：

It was Charles that (who) did it. 做这件事的是查尔斯。(强调从句中的主语 Charles)

It is you that (whom) we are talking about. 我们正在谈论的人是你。(强调从句中的宾语 you)

It was in Shanghai that our Party was founded. 我们的党是在上海建立的。(强调从句中的地点状语)

It was in July, 1921 that our Party was founded. 我们的党是 1921 年 7 月建立的。(强



调从句中的时间状语)

注意: a. 在上文后两个例句中不可误用关系副词 *where* 或 *when*, 因为被强调部分的 *Shanghai* 和 *July* 前使用了介词。如果没有介词来修饰 *Shanghai* 或 *July*, 句中应使用 *where* 或 *when*, 而不是 *that*。所以, 可以将上面的两个例子改成如下的形式。

It was Shanghai where our Party was founded. 我们的党是在上海成立的。

It was July, 1921 when our Party was founded. 我们的党是 1921 年 7 月成立的。

b. 非正式文体中, *It is...* 后的关系词 *that, which, who, when, where* 等词可以被省略。例如:

It is there (that) he must go. 他必须要去的是那里。

It is Tom (who) has done such a thing. 是汤姆做了这样一件事。

#### ④ 惯用词 *it*。

在一些习惯表达或俚语中, *it* 看来是宾语, 但实际上并不具有实际意义。例如:

I must have it out with him, and stop all this uncertainty.

我必须跟他说个清楚, 不能再这样含糊下去了。

I am not going to interfere in their quarrel; they'll have to fight it out between themselves. 我不打算干预他们的争吵; 他们得自行解决。

### (2) 相似代词比较

#### ① *one, that* 和 *it*。

*one* 表示泛指, *that* 和 *it* 表示特指。*that* 与所指名词为同类, 但不是同一个, 而 *it* 与所指名词为同一个。例如:

I can't find my hat. I think I must buy one. 我找不到我的帽子了。我想我该去买一顶。(泛指)

The hat you bought is bigger than that I bought. 你买的那顶帽子比我买的大。(同类但不指同一个)

I can't find my hat. I don't know where I put it. 我找不到我的帽子。我不知道把它放在哪了。(指同一物)

#### ② *one, another* 和 *the other*。

*another* 泛指另一个, 但表达一定范围内两个人(物), 一个用 *one*, 另一个用 *the other*。一定范围内三者, 一个用 *one*, 另一个用 *one* 或 *another*, 第三个可用 *the other* 或 *a third*。一定范围内, 除去一部分人/物, 剩余的全部用 *the others*。泛指别的人或物时, 用 *others* 表示在一定范围内, 除去一部分后的剩余部分但不是全部时, 也用 *others*。

#### ③ *anyone, any one, no one, none, every, each*。

*anyone* 仅指人, *any one* 既可指人, 也可指物。*no one* 和 *none* 的区别在于 *none* 后跟 *of* 短语, 既可指人又可指物, 而 *no one* 单独使用, 只指人。*none* 作主语时, 谓语动词用单、复数均可, 而 *no one* 作主语时谓语动词只能是单数。例如:

None of you could lift it. 你们中没有人可举起它。

— Did any one call me up just now? 刚才有人打电话给我吗?

— No one. 没有。

every 强调全体的概念, each 强调个体概念。例如:

Every student in our school works hard. 我们学校的学生都很用功。

Each student may have one book. 每个学生都可有一本书。

every 指三个以上的人或物(含三个), each 指两个以上的人或物(含两个)。every 只作形容词, 不可单独使用。each 可作代词或形容词。例如:

Every student has to take one. 所有的学生都必须拿一个。

Each boy has to take one. 每个男孩都必须拿一个。

Each of the boys has to take one. 男孩中的每个人都必须拿一个。

但 every 不可作状语, each 可作状语; every 有反复重复的意思, 如 every two weeks 等 each 没有。当 every 与 not 连用, 表示部分否定; each 和 not 连用表示全部否定。例如:

Every man is not honest. 并非每个人都诚实。

Each man is not honest. 每个人都不诚实。

#### ④ few, little, a few, a little.

few, a few 修饰可数名词; little, a little 修饰不可数名词。a few / a little 为肯定含义, 指“还有一点”; few / little 为否定含义, 指“没有多少了”。例如:

He has a few friends. 他有几个朋友。

He has few friends. 他几乎没有朋友。

We still have a little time. 我们还有点时间。

There is little time left. 几乎没剩下多少时间了。

常见的固定搭配: only a few (=few), not a few (=many), quite a few (=many), many a (=many)。例如:

Many books were sold. = Many a book was sold. 卖出了许多书。

#### ⑤ many, much.

many, much 都表示“许多”, many 用于修饰可数名词, much 用于修饰不可数名词。例如:

How many people are there at the meeting?

会议上有多少人?

How much time has been left?

还剩下多少时间?

Many of the workers are at the meeting.

很多工人在开会。

Much of the time was spent on learning. 很多时间被花在学习上了。

⑥ both, either, neither, all, any 和 none。

both (两者都)与复数名词连用, either(两者中任何一个)与单数名词连用, neither (两者都不)可单独使用也可与 of 短语连用。这三个词的使用范围都是两个人或物。例如:

Both the boys are clever. 两个男孩都很聪明。

Either of the two boys is clever. 两个男孩不论哪一个都很聪明。

Neither of the two boys is clever. 两个男孩都不聪明。

all (所有的, 全部的人或物), any (任何一个), none (都不)这三个词的使用范围均为三者以上。例如:

All the flowers are gone. 所有的花都谢了。

I don't like any of the flowers. 这些花我都不喜欢。

I like none of the flowers. 这些花我都不喜欢。

注意: all 与 none 用法一样。作为主语或修饰主语用时, 其后谓语动词的单复数形式由其所代替或修饰的名词决定。另外, all 用于否定句中时, 句子表达部分否定的意义。例如:

All of the students are not there. 并非所有的学生都在那里。

All (of) the milk is there. 所有的牛奶都在那里。

### (3) some 的用法

some 除了用于肯定句中表示“一些”外, 还可以用于下列情况:

① 在肯定疑问句中, 说话人认为对方的答案会是肯定的, 或期望得到肯定的回答时。例如:

Would you like some coffee? 你想喝点咖啡吗?

② 在条件状语从句中表示确定的意义时。例如:

If you need some help, please let me know. 如果你需要帮助, 请让我知道。

③ some 位于否定句的主语部分时。例如:

Some students haven't been there before. 有些学生以前从来没有去过那里。

④ 当否定的内容是整体中的一部分时, some 可用于否定句。例如:

I haven't heard from some of my old friends these years.

这些年我没有收到一些老朋友的信。

### (4) 区别使用不同的指示代词

① 指示代词在作主语时可指物也可指人, 但作其他句子成分时只能指物, 不能指人。例如:

(对) That is my teacher. 那是我的老师。(that 作主语, 指人)

(对) He is going to marry this girl. 他要和这位姑娘结婚。(this 作限定词)

(错) He is going to marry this. (this 作宾语时不能指人)

(对) I bought this. 我买这个。(this 指物, 可作宾语)

② that 和 those 可作定语从句的先行词, 但 this 和 these 不能。同时, 在作先行词时, 只有 those 可指人, those who 意思相当于 the people who。试比较:

(对) He admired that which looked beautiful. 他赞赏外表漂亮的東西。

(对) He admired those which looked beautiful.

他赞赏那些外表漂亮的東西。(those 指物)

(对) He admired those who looked beautiful. 他赞赏那些外表漂亮的人。(those 指人)

(错) He admired that who danced well. (that 作宾语时不能指人)

(对) He admired those who danced well. 他赞赏舞跳得好的人。(those 指人)

③ and that 结构可用于避免前一分句中全部或部分重复。例如:

Return to your work, and that immediately! (and that = and return to your work)

回去工作, 马上去!

She has lost a dictionary, and that the one she bought only the other day. (and that = and she has lost) 她丢失了一本字典, 就是她前几天刚买的那本。

④ this 和 that 用于形容词前时, 是表示程度的副词, 意思相当于 so。例如:

If it is that good, I'll take one. 如果真有那么好的话, 我也要一个。

I can only give you this much. 我只能给你这么多。

### (5) 疑问代词辨异

① which 和 what 无论是作为疑问代词还是限定词, 所指的范围都不同。what 指的范围是无限的, 而 which 则指在一定的范围内。例如:

Which girls do you like best? 你喜欢哪几个姑娘?

What girls do you like best? 你喜欢什么样的姑娘?

② whom 是 who 的宾格, 在书面语中, 它作为动词宾语或介词宾语; whom 在口语中作宾语时, 可用 who 代替, 但在介词后只能用 whom。例如:

Who(whom) did you meet on the street? 你在街上遇到了谁? (作动词宾语)

Who(whom) are you taking the book to? 你要把这书带给谁? (作介词宾语, 置句首)

To whom did you speak on the campus?

你在校园里和谁讲话了? (作介词宾语, 置于介词后, 不能用 who 取代。)

③ 疑问代词用于对介词宾语提问时, 过去的文体中常将介词和疑问代词一起放在句首; 但在现代英语中, 疑问代词放在句首, 介词放在句末。例如:

For what do most people live and work?

大多数人生活和工作的目的是什么? (旧文体)

What do most people live and work for?

大多数人是为了什么而生活和工作? (现代英语)

④ 疑问代词还可引导名词性从句。例如:

I can't make out what he is driving at. 我不知道他用意何在。

Can you tell me whose is the blue shirt on the bed?

你能告诉我床上的蓝衬衣是谁的吗?

Much of what you say I agree with, but I cannot go all the way with you.

你所说的我大部分同意, 但并不完全赞同。

## II. 学法指导

### • 巧用反身代词 •

“一不用”: 反身代词本身不能单独作主语。

(错) Myself drove the car.

(对) I myself drove the car. 我自己开车。

“三要用”

A. 在 and, or 和 nor 连接的并列主语中, 第二个主语可用反身代词(特别是 myself) 作主语。例如:

Charles and myself saw it. 查尔斯和我看见的。

B. 主语和宾语指代同一人或事物时, 宾语应使用反身代词。例如:

You should be proud of yourself. 你应该为自己而自豪。

We enjoyed ourselves very much last night. 昨晚我们玩得很开心。

C. 在不强调的情况下, but, except, for 等介词后的宾语用反身代词或人称代词宾格均可。例如:

No one but myself (me) is hurt. 除我之外没有人受伤。

## III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. Although Anne is happy with her success she wonders \_\_\_\_\_ will happen to her private life.

A. that

B. what

C. it

D. this

答案: B

提示: what 引导宾语从句, 且 what 充当从句的主语。

译文: 尽管 Anne 对于她的成功很开心, 她却不知道自己的私生活会受到什么影响。

2. Although many people view conflict as bad, conflict is sometimes useful \_\_\_\_\_ it forces people to test the relative merits of their attitudes and behaviors.

- A. by which          B. to which          C. in that          D. so that

答案: C

提示: that 引导从句, 并在句中作为介词 in 的宾语。

译文: 很多人认为冲突是很糟糕的, 但有时候它也很有用, 它使得人们去检验自己的观点和行为中存在的相对价值。

3. Beer is the most popular drink among male drinkers, \_\_\_\_\_ overall consumption is significantly higher than that of women.

- A. whose          B. which          C. that          D. what

答案: A

提示: whose 引导定语从句。

译文: 啤酒在男性饮者中是最受欢迎的饮品, 他们整体的消耗量远远超出女性饮者。

4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the office had made a mistake, and the firm regretted causing the customer inconvenience.

- A. Some          B. Anyone          C. One          D. Someone

答案: D

提示: 不定代词 someone 在句中作主语。

译文: 办公室里有人犯了错误, 引起了顾客的不便, 公司为此感到抱歉。

5. No agreement was reached in the discussion as neither side would give way to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the other          B. any other          C. another          D. other

答案: A

提示: 表示一定范围内的另一个时用 the other。

译文: 因为双方都不愿意向对方做出让步, 讨论没有达成共识。

6. I have two sons but \_\_\_\_\_ of them likes sweets.

- A. both          B. neither          C. either          D. none

答案: B

提示: 表示“两者中任何一个都不”, 用 neither。

译文: 我有两个儿子, 但是他们都不喜欢甜食。

7. These two areas are similar \_\_\_\_\_ they both have a high rainfall during this season.

- A. except that          B. in that          C. besides that          D. to that

答案: B

提示: that 引导的从句作为介词 in 的宾语。

译文: 这两个地区的共同点是在这个季节它们的降雨量都极高。

8. Criticism and self-criticism is necessary \_\_\_\_\_ it helps us to find and correct our mistakes.

- A. by that                      B. at that                      C. on that                      D. in that

答案: D

提示: that 引导的从句在句中作为介词 in 的宾语。

译文: 批评和自我批评很有必要, 它能帮助我们发现并改正错误。

9. The British are not so familiar with different cultures and other ways of doing things, \_\_\_\_\_ is often the case in other countries.

- A. as                              B. what                              C. so                              D. that

答案: A

提示: as 引导定语从句, 先行词为主句中的全部内容。

译文: 英国人不太熟悉别的文化和做事情其他方式, 其他国家也经常是这样的情形。

10. The course normally attracts about 20 students per year, \_\_\_\_\_ up to half will be from overseas.

- A. in which                      B. for whom                      C. with which                      D. of whom

答案: D

提示: of whom 引导定语从句, 介词后面不能用 who。

译文: 通常情况下, 这门课每年会吸引大约 20 个学生, 其中半数的人来自海外。

11. Firms that use computers have found that the number of staff \_\_\_\_\_ control quality can be substantially reduced.

- A. whose                              B. as                              C. what                              D. that

答案: D

提示: that 引导定语从句, 同时要在从句中作主语用来指人。

译文: 使用计算机的公司发现, 掌控质量的员工数量会大幅下降。

12. \_\_\_\_\_ of the twins was arrested because I saw both at a party last night.

- A. None                              B. Both                              C. Neither                              D. All

答案: C

提示: 表示“两者中任何一个都不”用 neither。

译文: 那对双胞胎都没被捕, 因为我昨晚在一个晚会上看见了他俩。

13. Have you ever been in a situation \_\_\_\_\_ you know the other person is right yet you cannot agree with him?

- A. by which                      B. that                              C. in where                      D. where

答案: B

提示: that 引导同位语从句, 且 that 在句中不具有任何实际意义。

译文: 你是否经历过明知对方是正确的却不愿意同意其观点的场合呢?

14. We've just installed an air-conditioner in our apartment, \_\_\_\_\_ should make great differences in our life next summer.

- A. which                  B. what                  C. that                  D. they

答案: A

提示: which 作为指物的关系代词引导非限制性定语从句。

译文: 我们刚在套房里装了台空调, 明年夏天的日子会大不一样。

15. Lucy Stone, \_\_\_\_\_ first feminists in the United States, helped organize the American Woman Suffrage Association in 1869.

- A. the one                  B. who was the                  C. another                  D. one of the

答案: D

提示: 不定代词 one 在句中作为露西·司通的同位语使用, of 短语对其进行限定。

译文: 露西·司通是美国最早的女权主义者之一, 她在 1869 年帮助建立了美国妇女选举权协会。

## IV. 考级阶梯性练习

### • 单项语法基础练习 •

- You'd better continue to use the same spelling of your name as \_\_\_\_\_ you used in your application.  
A. some one                  B. any                  C. the one                  D. one
- The little boy was left alone, with \_\_\_\_\_ to look after it.  
A. someone                  B. no one                  C. anyone                  D. not one
- When drinking from a well, one mustn't forget \_\_\_\_\_ who dug it.  
A. them                  B. these                  C. that                  D. those
- "How much tea is left in the pot?" " \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. None                  B. Not some                  C. Nothing                  D. No one
- The Lunar New Year was always a happy time \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. for us Chinese children                  B. for Chinese children as us  
C. for we Chinese children                  D. for we, Chinese children
- \_\_\_\_\_ the students of the class passed the examination.





19. The teacher asked \_\_\_\_\_ who had finished their homework to leave the classroom as quickly as they could.  
A. them                      B. those                      C. these                      D. they
20. "May I help you with some shoes, sir?" "Yes, I'd like to try on those brown \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. one                      B. ones                      C. two                      D. pair

• 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. "I did not go to the party." "Did \_\_\_\_\_ go to the party?"  
A. many John friends                      B. many John's friends  
C. my sister boy friend                      D. a boy friend of my sister's
2. \_\_\_\_\_ lessons were not difficult.  
A. Our first few short French                      B. Our few first short French  
C. Our few first French short                      D. Few our first French short
3. Bill said that he didn't do \_\_\_\_\_ paper work.  
A. many                      B. lots of                      C. a great deal of                      D. much
4. "What is the difference?" "This furniture is different from \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. that book                      B. your                      C. that one                      D. that
5. "We walked twenty miles today." "I never guessed you could have walked \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. as                      B. this                      C. that                      D. such
6. "Did you see any foreigner present at the party?" "He was the only foreigner \_\_\_\_\_ I saw at the party."  
A. whom                      B. that                      C. who                      D. which
7. "What do you think about these pies?" "I would like to have \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. some other                      B. another                      C. the other                      D. other
8. I will employ the man \_\_\_\_\_ they say is a fluent speaker of English.  
A. who that                      B. that                      C. which                      D. whom
9. He was informed that it was \_\_\_\_\_ who wanted the interview.  
A. I                      B. me                      C. myself                      D. mine
10. "I had to pay ten dollars for this book." "It's probably \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. worthy it                      B. worth them                      C. worth it                      D. worthy them
11. "Were all three people in the car injured in the accident?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ only the two passengers who got hurt."  
A. it was                      B. there is                      C. it were                      D. there was

12. To the finalists, \_\_\_\_\_, the last high jump was the most important.  
A. he and I      B. him and I      C. he and me      D. him and me
13. "Someone is at the door." " \_\_\_\_\_?"  
A. What is it      B. Who is it      C. Who is he      D. Which one is it
14. He talks a lot and he's never interested in what \_\_\_\_\_ has to say.  
A. one      B. anyone else      C. nobody else      D. some body else
15. Everybody in the class must give in \_\_\_\_\_ exercise book within the given time.  
A. their      B. her      C. our      D. his
16. \_\_\_\_\_ should visit the plant. The cast machine tools there will interest you all.  
A. He and you and the draftsman      B. You and he and the draftsman  
C. He and the draftsman and you      D. The draftsman and he and you
17. The dictionary is \_\_\_\_\_; the one over there is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. my, our      B. mine, you      C. mine, yours      D. my, yours
18. After this matter the relationship between them reached \_\_\_\_\_ highest point.  
A. its      B. their      C. they      D. theirs
19. "Do you want these pens?" "I don't like \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. them all      B. all them      C. all they      D. all every
20. When science, business, and art learn something of \_\_\_\_\_ goals, the world will have come closer to cultural harmony.  
A. one another's      B. each other's      C. themselves      D. one another

• 模拟自测题 •

1. His salary as a bus driver is much higher \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in comparison with a teacher's      B. than that of a teacher  
C. than a teacher      D. than of a teacher's
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you are familiar with the author's ideas, try reading all the sections as quickly as you possibly can.  
A. Now that      B. Ever since      C. So that      D. As long as
3. "Anything wrong?" "There was no objection on the part of \_\_\_\_\_ present."  
A. this      B. those      C. these      D. who
4. Although oriental ideas of woman's subordination to man prevailed in those days, she \_\_\_\_\_ meet with men on an equal basis.  
A. did not dared      B. dared not      C. dared not to      D. did dare not to
5. Since the earliest ancestors of the whales were land creatures, the question has arisen

- as to how \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. did the flipper adaptation of the whale originate  
B. was the flipper adaptation of the whale originated  
C. the flipper adaptation of the whale originated  
D. the flipper adaptation of the whale to originate
6. Bill said that he didn't do \_\_\_\_\_ paper work.  
A. many                      B. lots of                      C. a great deal of                      D. much
7. Iron \_\_\_\_\_ steel, which is known to us all.  
A. is used to making                      B. is used to make  
C. is being used to make                      D. is getting used to make
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is human nature that many people don't cherish the things they have until they lose it.  
A. It                      B. Such                      C. That                      D. This
9. Weather \_\_\_\_\_ , the students of Class Two will have a picnic this Sunday.  
A. permitted                      B. permitting  
C. permits                      D. will permit
10. An air brake is \_\_\_\_\_ the power of compressed air to stop a wheel from turning.  
A. a brake that uses                      B. a brake used to  
C. what any brake is used for                      D. that brake is used for
11. No matter how frequently \_\_\_\_\_ , the work of Beethoven always attract large audience.  
A. performing                      B. performed                      C. to be performed                      D. being performed
12. They laughed at \_\_\_\_\_ off the bicycle.  
A. my brother and I falling                      B. my brother and me falling  
C. my brother's and my falling                      D. my brother and me fall
13. "Do you need more water in the pan?" "No, it has \_\_\_\_\_ ."  
A. already enough full                      B. full already enough  
C. already had enough                      D. had already enough
14. This is \_\_\_\_\_ such a thing.  
A. my first time of seeing                      B. my first time to see  
C. the first time I have ever seen                      D. my first time I have ever seen
15. "After that, what happened to him?" "The chance to enter \_\_\_\_\_ come and he took it."  
A. to college                      B. the college                      C. for college                      D. college
16. \_\_\_\_\_ got on the train when it started to move.

- A. I rarely had    B. Scarcely had I    C. No sooner I had    D. No sooner had I
17. We have done once but failed. We'll have to do it \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
A. a second    B. the second    C. the twice    D. twice
18. \_\_\_\_\_, ozone levels in the ionosphere appear to have dropped recently.  
A. However the reason is    B. It is the reason  
C. What is the reason    D. Whatever the reason is
19. "John had the piano tuned today." "Was it \_\_\_\_\_?"  
A. out of tune badly before    B. before badly out of tune  
C. badly out of tune before    D. out of tune before badly
20. "Leaving for Chicago?" " \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. Soon    B. Lately    C. Late    D. Sooner
21. "Jane acts quite unfriendly." "I think she is \_\_\_\_\_ than unfriendly."  
A. shy    B. shy    C. more shy rather    D. more shy
22. "Would you like me to go to the doctor with you?" "No, you \_\_\_\_\_ with me."  
A. need not to go    B. do not need go    C. need not go    D. need to not
23. With all the clothes she needed \_\_\_\_\_, Mary left the supermarket for home.  
A. to be bought    B. bought    C. buying    D. to have bought
24. "What did you see?" "We saw \_\_\_\_\_ police there."  
A. many    B. much    C. little    D. the
25. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ the decision as long as it is not too late.  
A. you to delay making    B. your delaying making  
C. your delaying to make    D. you delay to make
26. The division between the pure scientists and the applied scientist is \_\_\_\_\_  
apparent than real.  
A. rather    B. other    C. more    D. better
27. Some women \_\_\_\_\_ a good salary in a job instead of staying home, but they  
decided not to work for the sake of the family.  
A. must make    B. should have made  
C. would make    D. could have made
28. We didn't know his telephone number, otherwise we \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. would have telephoned    B. must have telephoned  
C. would telephone    D. had telephoned
29. My friend said she is very eager \_\_\_\_\_ a real Hollywood star.  
A. to meet    B. in meeting    C. for meeting    D. that she can meet
30. \_\_\_\_\_, she will not be able to go to the party.

- A. With a view to her being sick      B. In the event of her being sick  
C. With the object of her being sick      D. Far from her being sick
31. "Which bus should I take to go to the bookstore?" "Either of these buses \_\_\_\_\_ there."  
A. going      B. go      C. goes      D. will go
32. Niagara Falls is a great tourist \_\_\_\_\_, drawing millions of visitors every year.  
A. attention      B. attraction      C. appointment      D. arrangement
33. \_\_\_\_\_ you gave were correct.  
A. No one answer      B. None of the answers  
C. None answers      D. Neither of the answer
34. The mere fact \_\_\_\_\_ most people believe nuclear war would be madness does not mean that it will not occur.  
A. what      B. which      C. why      D. that
35. Mary's score on the test is the highest in her class; she \_\_\_\_\_ have studied very hard.  
A. may      B. shoaled      C. must      D. ought to
36. I walked too much yesterday and \_\_\_\_\_ are still aching now.  
A. my leg muscles      B. my leg's muscles  
C. my muscle's leg      D. my muscles of the leg
37. If the building project \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of this month is delayed, the construction company will be fined.  
A. being completed      B. is completed  
C. to be completed      D. completed
38. \_\_\_\_\_ before we depart the day after tomorrow, we should have a wonderful dinner party.  
A. Had they arrived      B. Would they arrive  
C. Were they to arrive      D. Were they arriving
39. Peter as well as his friends \_\_\_\_\_ to music.  
A. like to listen      B. likes to listen  
C. likes to hear      D. like listening
40. It was not until then that I came to know that knowledge \_\_\_\_\_ only from practice.  
A. had come      B. has to come      C. came      D. comes

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. C    2. B    3. C    4. D    5. A    6. A    7. A    8. D    9. C    10. C  
11. A    12. B    13. C    14. A    15. B    16. B    17. B    18. C    19. B    20. B

### 单项语法坡度练习

1. D    2. A    3. D    4. D    5. C    6. B    7. B    8. B    9. A    10. C  
11. A    12. D    13. B    14. B    15. D    16. B    17. C    18. A    19. A    20. A

### 模拟自测题

1. B    2. A    3. B    4. B    5. C    6. D    7. C    8. A    9. C    10. A  
11. B    12. B    13. C    14. C    15. B    16. B    17. A    18. D    19. C    20. A  
21. D    22. C    23. B    24. D    25. B    26. C    27. D    28. A    29. A    30. B  
31. C    32. B    33. B    34. D    35. C    36. A    37. C    38. C    39. B    40. D



# 数 词

表示人或事物的数目概念的词称为数词。其中包括基数词(the cardinals)、序数词(the ordinals)、分数(fractions)和小数(decimals)。

## I. 语法精要讲解

### 1) 一般要点精讲

我们可以用“规律”、“差异”和“相当”六个字来总结基数词和序数词的构成法和用法。

#### (1) 基数词

① 多数基数词的构成是有规律可循的。13~19 均以-teen 结尾, 它们都有两个重音; 20~90 等十位数的整数则以-ty 结尾。例如:

thirteen, fourteen, nineteen

thirty, forty, ninety

十位数和个位数之间用“-”, 十位数和百位数之间用“and”。例如:

thirty-one, fifty-two, eighty-nine

two **hundred** and seventy-three, four hundred and sixteen

one (a) **thousand** three hundred and forty-eight, seven hundred and eighty **million**

英语中“万”、“亿”等数目的表示法。例如: ten thousand (10 000), one hundred thousand(100 000)

ten million (10 000 000), one hundred million (100 000 000)

② 看似规则实则有异的基数词。例如:

thirteen / thirty (three), fifteen / fifty (five)

fourteen / forty (four), eighteen / eighty (eight)

英语与美语之间的差异, 美语中十位数与百位数之间不用“and”。例如:

eight hundred fifty (850), four hundred twenty-six(426)

one hundred nine(109), five thousand seventeen(5 017)



“billion”一词在英语和美语中分别表示不同的数目。例如：

1 000 000 000 — one billion(美式)= one thousand million (英式) 十亿

1 000 000 000 000 — one billion (英式) = one trillion(美式) 万亿

③ 相当于一个名词或形容词。例如：

Three were absent yesterday morning. (主语)

Is there any room for them four? (同位语)

He cut the watermelon in two. (宾语)

There are three keyboard operators in our department. (定语)

Ten plus seven is seventeen. (表语)

## (2) 序数词

① 绝大多数序数词的构成是有规律可循的。序数词一般以与之相应的基数词加词尾-th 构成。例如：

fourth, sixth, tenth, eleventh, thirteenth, nineteenth (4th, 6th, 10th, 11th, 13th, 19th)

three thousand five hundredth (3 500th), sixty-two thousandth (62 000th)

以-ty 结尾的基数词，要先变 y 为 i，再加-eth。例如：

twentieth, fortieth, eightieth (20th, 40th, 80th)

基数词“几十几”变序数词时，仅将个位数变成序数词。例如：

thirty-first, fifty-second, seventy-third, ninety-seventh (31st, 52nd, 73rd, 97th)

② 看似规则实则有异的序数词。例如：

fifth (five), eighth (eight), ninth (nine), twelfth (twelve)

序数词前一般须加定冠词，但在某些惯用语中，序数词前无定冠词。例如：

My mother-in-law saw at first glance that I was pregnant.

The patient agreed to take some medicine at first, but on second thoughts he refused to do so.

③ 相当于一个名词或形容词。例如：

The Smith's have three children and only the second is a girl. (主语)

Sophie was among the first to arrive at the airport. (宾语)

You will be the fifth to speak. (表语)

John is planning to prepare a special gift for his father's second marriage. (定语)

## (3) 分数词

分数有两种表示方法：

① 基数与序数词混合表达法，分子为基数词，分母为序数词，分子大于“一”时，序数词用复数。例如：

$\frac{1}{3}$  — a / one-third,  $\frac{2}{3}$  — two-thirds,  $\frac{4}{5}$  — four-fifths

$\frac{1}{4}$ —a / one -fourth,  $\frac{7}{9}$ —seven-ninths,  $\frac{3}{4}$ —three-fourths

$30\frac{7}{8}$ — thirty and seven- eighths,  $5\frac{2}{7}$ — five and two-sevenths

② 基数与名词的混合表达法。例如：

$\frac{1}{2}$ — a/one half                       $3\frac{1}{4}$  three and one quarter

$\frac{1}{4}$ — a/one quarter                   $\frac{3}{4}$ — three quarters

#### (4) 小数

小数用基数词表示，小数点读作“point”，小数点前的数按基数词规则读，小数点后的数则按顺序逐个读出。例如：

0.85 读作：nought / zero point eight five

15.397 读作：fifteen point three nine seven

0.04 读作：(nought) point nought four 或 zero point zero four

#### (5) 年、月、日、时刻表示法

① 年的读法是以“hundred”为单位，但在某些情况下 hundred 可以省略。例如：

987 读作：nine hundred and eighty-seven 或 nine eighty-seven

1 700 读作：seventeen hundred

1 962 读作：nineteen sixty-two 或 nineteen hundred and sixty-two

1 805 读作：eighteen and five 或 eighteen o five

② 月份的第一个字母必须大写。多数月份(May, June, July 除外)都有缩写形式，只写前三个字母，惟有 September 用前四个字母。例如：

August—Aug.      March—Mar.      April—Apr.      October—Oct.

③ 通常用序数词(前面须用 the)表示日期。例如：

3—the third      16—the sixteenth      31—the thirty-first

④ 某年某月某日的表示法。例如：

1954 年 6 月 7 日—June 7, 1954 或 the seventh of June, 1954

1960 年 9 月 20 日—September 20, 1960 或 the twentieth of September, 1960

⑤ 表示时刻有两种方法。

A. 表示“几点几分”用介词 past(美国英语用 after)，但分数须在半小时以内(包括半小时在内)。例如：

6 点 5 分—five past six 或 six five

7 点 15 分—a quarter past seven 或 seven fifteen

10 点半—half past ten 或 ten thirty

B. 表示“几点差几分”用介词 to(美国英语用 of), 但分数须在半小时以上(不包括半小时在内)。例如:

8 点差 3 分—three to eight 或 seven fifty-seven

11 点差 15 分—a quarter to eleven 或 ten forty-five

9 点差 19 分—nineteen to nine 或 eight forty-one

### (6) 常用数学公式的表达方式

① 加法(Addition)。

$3+6=9$  Three and six are (is) nine. { colloq. }

Three plus six equals nine. { formal }

② 减法(Subtraction)。

$10-6=4$  Six from ten leaves (is) four. { colloq. }

Ten minus six equals four. { formal }

③ 乘法(Multiplication)。

$4\times 7=28$  Four times seven is (makes) twenty-eight. { colloq. }

Four multiplied by seven equals twenty-eight. { formal }

④ 除法(Division)。

$40\div 8=5$  Eight into forty is (goes) five. { colloq. }

Forty divided by eight equals five. { formal }

### (7) 倍数

关于倍数的增减, 常见的表达方式有下列几种。

① 由静态动词“be”构成的倍数增减。

A. A is +表倍数的词+形容词比较级 than B. 例如:

Beijing is three times bigger than my home town.

北京比我的家乡大 3 倍。

B. A is +形容词比较级 than B by +表倍数的词. 例如:

Beijing is bigger than my home town by three times.

北京的大小 3 倍于我的家乡。

C. A is +表倍数的词+ as +形容词原级 as B. 例如:

Beijing is three times as big as my home town.

北京的大小是我的家乡的 3 倍。

② 由动态动词“increase, decrease, reduce, etc.”构成的倍数增减。

A. 表示增加的动词+表倍数的词. 例如:

The computers increased productivity four fold. 这些计算机使生产率提高了 3 倍。

The defense and war drives built a magnesium industry, expanded the capacity for

aluminum production more than eight times.

防卫与战争的热潮造就了镁工业，使铝的生产能力增大了 7 倍多。

B. 表示增加的动词+ by +表倍数的词或+ to +表倍数的词。例如：

The total output value of this plant in 1999 increased by (to) 5.3 times as compared with that of 1966.

1999 年同 1966 年相比，这个工厂的总产值增长了 5.3 倍(即增长到 5.3 倍)。

C. 表示减少的动词 decrease, reduce, fall, drop 等+by+数字。例如：

The output of microchips of the USA last year dropped by one-seventh as compared with that of 1987. 去年美国的微型集成电路块产量比 1987 年减少了七分之一。

③ 倍数表达英汉差异。

A. 英语中可以说“减少多少倍”，汉语一般说“减少几分之几”。例如：

This bridge is 3 times shorter than that one.

这座桥的长度是那座桥的 1/4 (或这座桥比那座桥短 3/4)。

Box A is five times smaller than Box B.

A 箱的大小是 B 箱的 1/6(或 A 箱比 B 箱小 5/6)。

B. 表示减少的动词 + 表示倍数的词，指减少到原来的几分之一。例如：

This wire shortened four times. 这电线的长度缩短到原来的 1/4 (即缩短了 3/4)。

The output reduced six times. 产量减少到原来的 1/6 (即减少了 5/6)。

C. 表示倍数增加时，如译成汉语净增数应为句中数量词减去“一”之后的量。

Last year the output value of the light industry of their city increased 2.3 times as against 1979. 去年同 1979 年相比，他们市轻工业产值增长了 1.3 倍。

Since 1980 the population of the town has increased by more than 4 times.

从 1980 年以来，这城镇的人口增加了 3 倍多。

When the moon was half its present distance from the earth, its power over the ocean tides was eight times as great as now.

当月亮到地球的距离仅为目前的一半时，月亮对海潮的引力比现在的引力大 7 倍。(即月亮对海潮引力的大小是现在的 8 倍)

## 2) 特别要点精讲

### (1) 基数词复数形式所表达的含义

① twenty, thirty, …ninety 等十位数的整数的复数形式可用来表示岁数或年代。例如：

His mother is still in her early forties.

他母亲还只 40 岁出头。

The poet died in his twenties.

那位诗人二十几岁就去世了。

Tangshan earthquake took place in the 1970s.

唐山大地震发生在 20 世纪 70 年代。

② score, hundred, thousand, million 等数词的复数表示大概数目“几十”、“成百”、“成千”等。例如：

Thousands of black Americans turned out to welcome president Lincoln.

成千上万的美国黑人出来欢迎林肯总统。

As a tourist guide, I have been to the Great Wall dozens of times.

作为一名导游，我去过长城几十次。

The students arrived at the stadium in twos and threes.

学生们三三两两来到了体育馆。

③ 在表达习惯用法的短语中，某些数词以复数形式出现具有特别的含义。

A. 表示“多”的意思。例如：

We have a hundred and one thorny problems to deal with. 我们有许多问题要处理。

His computer is ten times better than mine. 他的计算机比我的好得多。

B. 表示可能性很大。例如：

Nine times out of ten the old man has already died of lung cancer.

那位老人很可能已死于肺癌。

It's a thousand to one that the Chinese team has won the game.

中国队很可能已经获胜。

C. 表示其他意义。例如：

My boss is having her forty winks. (=having a nap) 我的老板正在小睡。

The young lady dressed up to the nines. (=smartly) 那位年轻的女士打扮得很漂亮。

The baby girl went down on all fours. (=on the hands and knees) 那个女婴跪着爬行。

④ 基数词作主语表示数目的大小、金钱、时间、距离、计量等含义时通常被视为整体看待，谓语动词一般用单数形式。例如：

Fifteen means ten and five. 15 就是 10 加 5。

252 is a large number. 252 是一个很大的数目。

Five years is quite a long time. 5 年是相当长的时间。

Ten dollars is enough. 10 美元足够了。

⑤ many a, more than one 后接单数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数。例如：

There is more than one problem to solve. 不止一个问题要解决。

More than one person has gone abroad in our village. 我们村不止一人出国了。

⑥ “one or two ” 作主语时，谓语动词常用复数形式。例如：

One or two boys are needed this time. 这次需要几个男孩。

There are one or two questions for you to answer. 有几个问题要你回答。

⑦ 基数词与名词用连字符连接构成复合形容词时，即使数词是“two”或更大的数目，名词仍用单数形式。例如：

The journalist describe the terrible situation in Iraq in a four-page report.

那位记者在 1 份 4 页的报告中描述了伊拉克的糟糕的局势。

It sometimes took an operator hours to set up a 3-minute call.

有时接线员要花好几个小时才能接通一个 3 分钟的电话。

### (2) 序数词与基数词同时修饰名词时的次序

① 通常情况下，我们把序数词放在基数词之前。例如：

The first two chapters are the easiest to read. 开头两章最容易读。

The second one hundred copies didn't arrive until this afternoon.

第二批 100 本今天下午才到。

② 如果序数词相当于一个描绘性形容词，我们必须把它放在基数词后面。例如：

The sportsman has won three first prizes and two second prizes these days.

这些天来，那位运动员已获得了 3 个一等奖和 2 个二等奖。

### (3) 分数

分数比较复杂时，分子和分母都用基数词。例如：

36/79—thirty-six over seventy-nine, 22/8—twenty-two over eight

232/345—two hundred and thirty-two over three hundred and forty-five

### (4) 小数

小于“一”的小数后的名词常常采用复数形式。例如：

One pound equals 0.454 kilogrammes. 1 磅等于 0.454 千克。

### (5) 年、月、日、时刻表示法

“6/8/98”在英国表示“1998 年 8 月 6 日”，在美国则表示“1998 年 6 月 8 日”。

### (6) 倍数

注意 by 的用法及其与 to 的区别。

① by 常常和百分数连用，做状语。例如：

The production of mobile phones has been increased (by) 60%.

手机的生产量已增长了 60%。

The cost of this car went down by 10%. 这辆车的成本下降了 10%。

② 比较 by 与 to 所表达的不同含义。例如：

The temperature decreased to 5°C. 温度降到 5°C。

The temperature decreased by 5°C. 温度降了 5°C。

## II. 学法指导

### • 千位及千位以上基数词速读法 •

A. 从右至左每隔三位数(三个零)定一个单位, 依次形成 thousand (1 000), million (1 000 000), billion (1 000 000 000), trillion (1 000 000 000 000)这四个一级单位。

B. 确定每个一级单位上的十位数和百位数, 即二级单位。例如:

21 000 — twenty-one **thousand**

432 000 — four hundred and thirty-two **thousand**

63 000 000 — sixty-three **million**

574 000 000 — five hundred and seventy-four **million**

98 000 000 000 — ninety-eight **billion**

346 000 000 000 — three hundred and forty-six **billion**

23 000 000 000 000 — twenty-three **trillion**

879 000 000 000 000 — eight hundred and seventy-nine **trillion**

321 548 796 → three hundred and twenty-one **million**, five hundred and forty-eight **thousand**, seven hundred and ninety-six

## III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. Americans eat \_\_\_\_\_ as they actually need every day.

A. twice protein as much

B. twice as much protein

C. protein as much twice

D. protein as twice much

答案: B

提示: much 必须放在 protein 前。

译文: 美国人摄入的蛋白质是他们实际上每天所需量的两倍。

2. About 40 \_\_\_\_\_ of the population of that country \_\_\_\_\_ on farms.

A. percent; lives

B. percent; live

C. percents; live

D. percents; lives

答案: B

提示: percent 不用复数形式, population 是集合名词。

译文: 那个国家 40% 的人口靠农场生活。

3. As a matter of fact, Saudi Arabia's oil reserves \_\_\_\_\_ those of Kuwait.

A. come second following

B. come second with

C. are only second to

D. are second only to

答案: D

提示: 其中 be second only to 意为“仅次于”。

译文: 实际上, 沙特阿拉伯的石油储量仅次于科威特。

4. Their factory has turned out \_\_\_\_\_.

A. twice TV sets this year more than last year

B. TV sets this year twice as many as last year

C. twice as many TV sets this year as last year

D. TV sets twice more this year than last year

答案: C

提示: twice 是前位限定词, many 和 more 都是后位限定词, 应放在 TV sets 前面。

译文: 他们厂今年生产的电视机是去年的两倍。

5. The width of the lower stream of Changjiang River is 50% \_\_\_\_\_ the upper stream.

A. more than

B. that more of

C. that more than

D. more than that of

答案: D

提示: more than 表示两者相比, that 指下游的宽度。

译文: 长江上游的宽度比下游的宽度宽 50%。

6. Light travels at a speed of approximately \_\_\_\_\_ sound.

A. 900 000 times as quickes as

B. 900 000 times as greater as

C. 900 000 times as quick as

D. 900 000 times as great as

答案: D

提示: 英语中形容速度快不用 quick。

译文: 光速大约是音速的 900 000 倍。

7. “Have you flown very much?”

“As a matter of fact, this trip is \_\_\_\_\_.”

A. my first

B. the first to me

C. the first one of mine

D. my one to be the first

答案: A

提示: 这里指 my first trip, trip 省去。

译文: “你是否常坐飞机?” “老实说, 这次旅行是我第一次坐飞机。”

8. After we made the improvement, there were only \_\_\_\_\_ as before.

A. one-tenth defective products as many

B. one-tenth as many defective products



C. defective products one-tenth as many

D. defective products as one-tenth many

答案: B

提示: one-tenth 和 many 都是限定词要置于名词词组的前面。

译文: 在我们做出改进后, 次品仅为以前的十分之一。

9. It will take \_\_\_\_\_ to build this highway.

A. one and half year's time

B. a year and a half's time

C. a year and a half of time

D. a year and a half time

答案: B

提示: 表示“一年半”的时间可以用: a year and a half's time; one and a half years of time。

译文: 建这条公路要花一年半的时间。

10. Amelia, \_\_\_\_\_ woman to make a solo flight across the Atlantic Ocean, was born in 1898.

A. the first

B. she was the first

C. the first who was a

D. was the first

答案: A

提示: 从语法上说, A 是唯一正确的选择。The first woman 作 Amelia 的同位语。

译文: 阿米莉亚, 第一个用单人飞机飞越大西洋的妇女, 生于 1898 年。

11. How many desks are there in the study? \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Are four

B. Are five chairs there

C. There's one

D. There's a chair

答案: C

提示: 由于这里问具体有多少数量, 所以只能用 one。

译文: 书房里有多少把椅子? 只有一把。

12. "Which is the car she drives?"

"It's \_\_\_\_\_."

A. car seventy-five

B. the seventy-five car

C. seventy-fifth car

D. the seventy-fifth car

答案: D

提示: 这里指 3 号赛车。

译文: “他驾驶哪一辆赛车?” “75 号车。”

13. "How did you pay the workers?"

"As a rule, they were paid \_\_\_\_\_."

A. by an hour

B. by the hour

C. by a hour

D. by hours

答案: B

提示: 英语中表示计算单位的名词前常要加定冠词 the。如: We sell potatoes by the kilo. Eggs are sold by the dozen.

译文: “你们如何给工人付酬?” “工人们通常计时取酬。”

14. This year the steel output of our plant has increased by three times as compared with that of last year, or put it in other words, this year's steel output of our plant is \_\_\_\_\_ that of last year.

A. three times more than

B. three times as much as

C. twice more than

D. twice as much as

答案: B

提示: 表示倍数增加时, 如译成汉语净增数应为 “n-1”。

译文: 今年同去年相比, 我们厂的钢产量增长了两倍, 换句话说, 我们厂今年的钢产量是去年的三倍。

15. Flight nineteen from New York is now arriving at \_\_\_\_\_.

A. gate two

B. the gate two

C. the two gate

D. second gate

答案: A

提示: 事物的编号有两种表达法: 1) 定冠词+序数词+名词; 2) 名词+基数词。

译文: 从纽约来的 19 次班机就要到达二号门。

16. She seems very mature for a \_\_\_\_\_.

A. twenty-year-old girl

B. girl with twenty years

C. girl of twenty year

D. twenty-years-old girl

答案: A

提示: 在现代英语里, 将词组甚至一个句子用连字符号连成复合词作定语的现象越来越多, 复合词中的名词用单数, 不用复数。

译文: 就 20 岁的女孩而言, 她似乎非常成熟。

17. The homework for Monday is to write \_\_\_\_\_ about your hometown.

A. a five-hundred-word composition

B. a five-hundred-words composition

C. a five-hundreds-words composition

D. a five-hundreds-word composition

答案: A

提示: 同 16 题。

译文: 星期一的课外作业是写一篇有关你家乡的 500 字的作文。



- A. reduced by one-fifth                      B. decreased to one-fifth  
C. decreased 4 times                         D. reduced by four-fifths
4. When the moon was half its present distance from the earth, its power over the earth was \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. eight times great as now                      B. as eight times as now  
C. eight times as great as now                      D. as eight times great as now
5. This box is three times \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. as heavy that one                              B. heavy than that one  
C. as that one's weight                              D. heavier than that one
6. The output of radio sets of that factory last year dropped by one-eighth \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. as against with 1987                              B. as compared with that in 1987  
C. as compared in 1987                              D. as compared against 1987
7. This year the income of A and C company increased \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. 15.5% with 1980                              B. by 15.5% as against that of 1980  
C. as 15.5% against with 1980                              D. as 15.5% by that of 1980
8. The Garden Hotel is 15 times \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. larger than them                              B. as my friends have  
C. as higher as yours                              D. as high as your house
9. The cotton output this year \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. increased two-fold compared with that of 1997  
B. increased two-fold against with in 1997  
C. against with 1997 increased two-fold  
D. compared with 1997 as increased two-fold
10. The number of pages assigned for daily reading \_\_\_\_\_ gradually increased to twelve.  
A. were                      B. was                      C. be                      D. are
11. Five pints \_\_\_\_\_ enough to get them drunk.  
A. are                      B. were                      C. is                      D. is being
12. A number of pages of this text book \_\_\_\_\_ badly torn.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. have                      D. are
13. There \_\_\_\_\_ more than one answer to this question.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. have                      D. has
14. Staying in a hotel costs \_\_\_\_\_ renting a room in a dormitory for a week.  
A. twice more than                              B. as much twice as  
C. twice as much as                              D. as much twice

15. Please write out the answers to the question at the end of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. eighth chapter                      B. eight chapter  
 C. chapter eight                        D. chapter the eight
16. They have a \_\_\_\_\_ old baby only.  
 A. third months                        B. three months  
 C. three-months                        D. three-month
17. "I think I failed the test."  
 "In my opinion, the \_\_\_\_\_ was the most unreasonable."  
 A. examination third question        B. question third of the examination  
 C. third examination question        D. examination of the third question
18. "When will John arrive?"  
 "We are expecting him to arrive \_\_\_\_\_."  
 A. on March 10th                        B. in March 10th  
 C. at March 10th                        D. upon March 10th
19. \_\_\_\_\_ kinds of decorative art: handicrafts and fine arts.  
 A. Although two                        B. There are two  
 C. In two                                 D. Two
20. An innovator, ballerina Augusta Maywood, was \_\_\_\_\_ a traveling company.  
 A. to form the first                      B. the first to form  
 C. who formed the first                D. forming the first

• 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. Ten years \_\_\_\_\_ but a short period in one's life time.  
 A. are                                      B. is                                      C. were                                      D. was
2. Between 1974 and 1997, the number of overseas visitors expanded \_\_\_\_\_ 27%.  
 A. by                                        B. for                                      C. to                                        D. in
3. Americans eat \_\_\_\_\_ as they actually need every day.  
 A. twice protein as much                B. twice as much protein  
 C. protein as much twice                D. protein as twice much
4. This bridge is 100 meters but that one is 400 meters. That is, this bridge is \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.  
 A. 5 times shorter                        B. 3 times shorter  
 C. one-fourth longer                      D. three-fourths shorter
5. Yesterday the temperature was 30°C. Today the temperature is 20°C. The temperature

- has decreased \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. two-thirds      B. to 10°C      C. by 10°C      D. one-third
6. The output of grain \_\_\_\_\_ in the past ten years.
- A. has doubled more than      B. has been doubled  
C. has more than doubled      D. was double
7. Our school is nine times \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. as your school the size      B. the size of yours  
C. with your school the size      D. the size in yours
8. The value of foreign trade \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. in 1985 was 5 times that of 1965      B. in 1985 is as 5 times of 1965  
C. in 1985 was as against 5 times with 1965  
D. is as against 5 times in 1985 with 1965
9. In \_\_\_\_\_ sentences the active form is acceptable, but not the passive.
- A. your all four      B. all four you  
C. your four all      D. all your four
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is such a spitfire.
- A. His that third brother      B. His third that brother  
C. Third that brother of his      D. That third brother of his
11. More than one student \_\_\_\_\_ excellent in the last exam.
- A. are      B. were      C. was      D. is
12. Three-fourths of the homework \_\_\_\_\_ today.
- A. has finished      B. has been finished  
C. have finished      D. have been finished
13. About 40 \_\_\_\_\_ of the population of that country \_\_\_\_\_ on farms.
- A. percent; lives      B. percent; live  
C. percents; live      D. percents; lives
14. You needn't worry, for only one or two students \_\_\_\_\_ suffering from cold.
- A. is      B. was      C. has been      D. are
15. At 13 \_\_\_\_\_ at a district school near her home, and when she was fifteen, she saw her first article in print.
- A. the first teaching position that Mary Jane Hawes had  
B. the teaching position was Mary Jane Hawes first  
C. when Mary Jane Hawes had her first teaching position  
D. Mary Jane Hawes had her first teaching position
16. As a matter of fact, Saudi Arabia's oil reserves \_\_\_\_\_ those of Kuwait.

- A. come second following                      B. come second with  
C. are only second to                            D. are second only to
17. "How did you pay the workers?"  
"As a rule, they were paid \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. by an hour      B. by the hour      C. by a hour              D. by hours
18. I wish I had not signed that contract without \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. first having consulted a lawyer      B. not first having consulted a lawyer  
C. first having consulted lawyer      D. first having consulting a lawyer
19. Caracas has been called the Los Angeles of South America; at \_\_\_\_\_ they look exactly the same.  
A. short notice                                      B. first sight  
C. first impression                                  D. first appearance
20. The additional work will take \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. another four weeks                              B. other four weeks  
C. four other weeks                                  D. four another weeks

• 模拟自测题 •

1. More than one student \_\_\_\_\_ involved in the fight with Class A.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. were                      D. was
2. Big Jim can eat \_\_\_\_\_ Small Tim for one single meal.  
A. as twice as much                                  B. twice as much as  
C. as much as twice                                  D. as twice much as
3. The monthly incomes of the local residents have gone up \_\_\_\_\_ 30 percent since last year.  
A. to                      B. at                      C. of                      D. by
4. The population of Wuhan City is 35 times \_\_\_\_\_ Huanggang City.  
A. that more of                                      B. that of  
C. that against                                      D. that more than
5. Horse Sure Thing runs \_\_\_\_\_ Unsure Thing.  
A. twice as fast as                                  B. as twice fast as  
C. twice fast as                                      D. twice faster as
6. The width of the lower stream of Changjiang River is 50% \_\_\_\_\_ the upper stream.  
A. more than                                      B. that more of





- in 1898.
- A. the first  
B. she was the first  
C. the first who was a  
D. was the first
18. "Did you buy anything at the clothing sale?"  
"Yes, I bought three \_\_\_\_\_ ties for just ten yuan."  
A. five-dollars  
B. fives-dollars  
C. five-dollar  
D. fives-dollar
19. How many desks are there in the study? \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. Are four  
B. Are five chairs there  
C. There's one  
D. There's a chair
20. What date is it? \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. The second of march  
B. March the second  
C. The second march  
D. Of march the second
21. "Which is the car she drives?"  
"It's \_\_\_\_\_ ."  
A. car seventy-five  
B. the seventy-five car  
C. seventy-fifth car  
D. the seventy-fifth car
22. Because his parents didn't approve of his majoring in physical education, William had reluctantly taken civil engineering \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. as the second choice  
B. the choice as the second  
C. as the choice two  
D. is second choice
23. I have told you this \_\_\_\_\_ times.  
A. dozen  
B. dozens  
C. a dozen  
D. dozens of
24. \_\_\_\_\_ of nine is six.  
A. Two-thirds  
B. Two-third  
C. Two thirds  
D. One third
25. "Rex told me you have moved."  
"Yes, into a \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. six-storey house  
B. house of six storeys  
C. house of six storeys  
D. six-storeys house
26. What date is it? It's \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. June twentieth-third  
B. of June twenty-third  
C. the twenty-third of June  
D. the twentieth-third of June
27. "How many presidents are there before Abraham Lincoln?"  
"Fifteen, so he is \_\_\_\_\_ ."

- A. the sixteen president                      B. the sixteenth president  
C. president sixteenth                      D. president the sixteen
28. "When did Jim finally get to the theater?"  
"Just before the end of \_\_\_\_\_."
- A. the act fourth                      B. act fourth  
C. act four                      D. the act four
29. According to the information, the newly-constructed bridge is said to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. lengthy eight miles                      B. length about eight miles  
C. about eight miles long                      D. in eight miles of length
30. \_\_\_\_\_, Bart was considered a great violinist.
- A. When age six                      B. At six years old  
C. When he was six years aged                      D. At the age of six
31. Their factory has turned out \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. twice TV sets this year more than last year  
B. TV sets this year twice as many as last year  
C. twice as many TV sets this year as last year  
D. TV sets twice more this year than last year
32. The price of the book was two yuan. The price now is 1.6 yuan. It has decreased \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. to 20%                      B. by 20%  
C. by 1.6 yuan                      D. to 0.4 yuan
33. The United States of America has a population of over \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. two hundred million                      B. two hundred millions  
C. two hundreds of millions                      D. two hundred million people
34. She was a \_\_\_\_\_ girl when I first saw her.
- A. nine-years-old                      B. nine-year-old  
C. nine-year old                      D. nine years old
35. He didn't go to my party last Sunday, because \_\_\_\_\_ he changed his mind.
- A. on a second thought                      B. by second thoughts  
C. on second thoughts                      D. the second thought

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. B    2. A    3. A    4. C    5. D    6. B    7. B    8. D    9. A    10. B  
11. C    12. D    13. A    14. C    15. C    16. D    17. C    18. A    19. B    20. B

## 单项语法坡度练习

1. B    2. A    3. B    4. B    5. C    6. C    7. B    8. A    9. D    10. D  
11. C    12. B    13. B    14. D    15. D    16. D    17. B    18. A    19. B    20. A

## 模拟自测题

1. D    2. B    3. D    4. B    5. A    6. D    7. C    8. D    9. B    10. C  
11. A    12. C    13. B    14. D    15. B    16. D    17. A    18. C    19. C    20. B  
21. A    22. A    23. D    24. A    25. A    26. C    27. B    28. C    29. C    30. D  
31. C    32. B    33. A    34. B    35. C

# 第五章

## 动 词

### 动词分类与时态(1)

动词(verb)是表示动作或状态的词,例如: work(工作), play(玩耍), have(有), live(生活), exist(存在)等。根据意义和句法作用,英语动词可分为实义动词、系动词、助动词和情态动词。

#### I. 语法精要讲解

##### 1) 一般要点精讲

我们主要通过动词的分类、动词的变化形式及动词的时态来理解各类动词的用法。

##### (1) 动词的分类

① 实义动词有完全的意义,并能独立作谓语。它表示有关主语的动作或状态。实义动词又可分为及物动词和不及物动词。

A. 及物动词后可以有宾语,可用于被动语态。例如:

The workers are building a new railroad.

工人们正在建一条新铁路。

The cars are made in Japan.

这些汽车是日本制造的。

B. 不及物动词后不能接宾语,也不能用于被动语态。例如:

The children were crying.

孩子们正在哭。

Mr. James has gone to Paris.

詹姆斯先生到巴黎去了。

C. 另有许多动词既可以作为及物动词,又可以作为不及物动词使用。例如:

The door opened. 门开着。

Tom opened the door. 汤姆打开了门。

D. 有些动词虽能用作及物动词和不及物动词，但意义上有差别。例如：

- { I didn't hear what he said. (听见)  
我没有听到他说什么。  
Have you heard about it? (听人讲到)  
你听人说到过此事吗？
- { They grow coffee in Brazil. (种植)  
他们在巴西种植咖啡。  
Coffee grows in Brazil. (生长)  
咖啡在巴西生长。

② 系动词作谓语时，后面接表语。常见的系动词有：be(是)，seem(似乎)，look(看起来)，become(变成)，appear(显得)，get(变得)，feel(感到)，turn(变成)，remain(仍然是)等。例如：

She doesn't look her age. 她看起来与她的年龄不相符。

He appeared quite touched at her words. 听到这些话，他显得特别感动。

③ 助动词(do, be, have, shall, will)本身没有实际意义，只是与动词构成进行体、完成体或被动语态。例如：

Does he have coffee with his breakfast? 他吃早餐时喝咖啡了吗？

Are you suggesting that I'm not doing my job properly.

你的意思是我没有认真工作吗？

④ 情态动词(will, shall, can, may, must, should, would, could, might 等)本身不具有意义，在使用时它必须与动词原形一起充当句子的谓语。例如：

Shall we have coffee outside? 我们到外面喝咖啡好吗？

May I borrow your pen for a moment? 可以借你的笔用一下吗？

一些主要情态动词的用法：

#### A. can

a. 表示能力。例如：

The theatre can seat 2 500 people. 这个剧院能够容纳 2 500 个人。

She can speak English and French. 她会讲英语和法语。

b. 表示可能性。例如：

One of the prisoners escaped yesterday—he can be anywhere by now.

昨天一名囚犯逃跑了，他现在可能在任何地方。

A more suitable book can't be found. 不可能找到一本更合适的书。

c. 表示允许。例如：

You can go home now. 你现在可以回家了。

You can't travel first-class with a second-class ticket.

你不可以拿二等舱的票坐头等舱的位子旅行。

d. could 是 can 的过去式, 除具有 can 的各种功能外, 还可以用来表示委婉客气的提出问题和陈述看法。例如:

Could you put out your cigarette, please? 请您熄灭香烟, 好吗?

I'm afraid we couldn't give you an answer today. 恐怕我们今天不能给你答案。

### B. may

a. 询问一件事情可不可以做。例如:

You may take this seat if you like. 如果你喜欢, 你可以坐这个位置。

You may come if you wish. 你要来就来好了。

b. 表示一件事或许会发生(或是某种情况会存在)。例如:

He may be engaged now. 他现在或许正忙。

You may walk for miles and miles among the hills without seeing a house.

你可能在山区走了很远的路而遇不到任何人。

c. 表示愿望和希望。例如:

May you both be happy. 祝你们两位幸福。

May that day come soon. 希望那一天会实现。

d. might 是 may 的过去式, 在表示可能这个概念时, may 和 might 是可以换用的, 但 might 表示的可能性小, 或者表示更委婉的语气。例如:

Jim may lend you the money.(可能性较大)

Jim might lend you the money.(可能性较小)

Might I ask you a question? (语气较委婉)

### C. must

a. 表示必须要做的事。例如:

Cars must not park in front of the entrance.

车辆不能停在入口处。

You must do as you are told.

你必须照着吩咐去做。

b. 表示一种揣测,可能性极大(只用于肯定句中)。例如:

This must be your room.

这一定是你的房间。

You must be hungry after your long walk.

你走了这么长的路肯定饿了。

### D. ought

a. 表示应该。例如:

We ought to help each other in our work. 在工作中我们应该互相帮助。

Coffee ought to be drunk while it is hot. 咖啡应该趁热喝。

b. 表示可能性。例如：

If he started at nine, he ought to be here now.

假如他在 9 点出发的话，现在大概到这儿了。

That ought to be enough fish for three people, I think.

我想这大概有够三个人吃的鱼。

#### E. need

表示必须、必要。主要用于否定句和疑问句。例如：

I don't think you need hurry. 我认为你不需要着急。

I hardly need say how much we miss you. 不用说我有多想你了。

#### F. dare

表示敢于的意思。主要用于疑问句，否定句和条件从句中。例如：

How dare he say such rude things about me? 他怎敢说出这样对我不礼貌的话？

I wonder whether he dare try. 我不知他是否敢于一试。

### (2) 动词的变化形式

绝大多数英语动词都有四种变化形式：原形、过去式、过去分词和现在分词。例如：  
play—played—played—playing。

① 动词过去式和过去分词的变化规则如下。

A. 一般情况下，加-ed，如：laugh—laughed—laughed；以字母 e 结尾的动词加-d，如：live—lived—lived。

B. 以辅音字母加 y 结尾，变 y 为 i，加-ed 如：try—tried—tried。

C. 以重读闭音节结尾，末尾只有一个辅音字母，双写末尾的辅音字母加-ed。如：plan—planned—planned。

② 动词现在分词的变化规则如下。

A. 一般情况下加-ing，如：laugh—laughing；以字母 e 结尾的动词去掉 e，加-ing，如：live—living。

B. 以重读闭音节结尾，末尾只有一个辅音字母，双写末尾的辅音字母加-ing，如：plan—planning。

### (3) 动词的时态

英语各种时态构成表

	一般时态	进行时态	完成时态	完成进行时态
现在	play plays	is playing am playing are playing	has played have played	has been playing have been playing

续表

	一般时态	进行时态	完成时态	完成进行时态
过去	played	was playing were playing	had played	had been playing
将来	shall play will play	shall be playing will be playing	shall have played will have played	shall have been playing will have been playing
过去将来	should play would play	should be playing would be playing	should have been played would have been played	should have been playing would have been playing

上表中列出了英语的 16 种时态，它们分别是一般现在时、一般过去时、一般将来时、*一般过去将来时*、现在进行时、过去进行时、将来进行时、*过去将来进行时*、现在完成时、过去完成时、将来完成时、*过去将来完成时*、现在完成进行时、*过去完成进行时*、*将来完成进行时*、*过去将来完成进行时*。斜体部分印刷的时态在实际运用中较为少见，故本书略去不讲。

### ① 一般现在时。

用动词原形，第三人称单数有变化。

基本规则：一般情况加-s，以辅音加 y 结尾的词把 y 改为 i，再加-es（但元音加 y 结尾的词则直接加-s），以 o, s, x, ch, sh 结尾的词加-es。be 动词的变化形式是 am, is, are。

A. 表示习惯的、永久性的或反复发生的动作(常同 often, sometimes, usually, always, twice a month, every week, on Sundays, occasionally 等状语连用)。例如：

It seldom snows here. 这里很少下雪。

She always takes a walk in the evening. 她常在晚间散步。

B. 表示特征、能力或状态。例如：

She loves music. 她喜欢音乐。

Contradictions exist everywhere. 矛盾处处存在。

C. 表示普遍真理、事实，也用在格言中。例如：

The earth moves round the sun. 地球绕着太阳转。

Light travels faster than sound. 光速快于音速。

D. 在由 when, if, after, before, although, as, as soon as, the minute, the next time, whether, because, even if, in case, though, till, until, unless, so long as, where, whatever, wherever 等词引导的表示时间、条件、比较等的状语从句中，用一般现在时代替一般将来时。例如：

I'll tell her when she comes tomorrow. 她明天来的时候我会告诉她。

You will surely succeed if you try your best. 功夫不负有心人。

E. 表示现在瞬间的行为。



一般现在时可以用于体育运动的实况报道、戏法表演、技术操作表演等的解说词。  
例如：

Demonstrator: Now I put the cake mixture into this bowl and add a drop of vanilla essence.

Now, look, I open the box.

F. 表示将来时间。

一般现在时可用于指将来时间，表示按时间早晚将要发生的动作或事件，或者事先安排好的动作。例如：

The plane takes off at 11 a.m. 飞机上午 11 点起飞。

I am in my office from three to six this afternoon. 下午 3 点到 6 点我在办公室。

② 一般过去时。

一般过去时由动词的过去式表示，动词 be 有 was, were 两个过去式，was 用于第一和第三人称单数，were 用于其他情况。在构成否定和疑问句时，一般都借助助动词 did，动词 be 有其独特的疑问及否定形式。

A. 表示过去某个特定时间或某一段时间发生的动作或情况。这种过去时间的用法可以是指明的，也可以是不指明的。例如：

He never smoked. 他以前从不抽烟。

The foreign guests visited Nanjing last summer. 这些外国人去年夏天访问过南京。

B. 在表示时间或条件等的状语从句中代替过去将来时。例如：

We should not leave until she came back. 她回来我们才会离开。

She told me that she would not go with us if it rained the next day.

她对我说，如果第二天下雨她就不同我们一块儿去了。

C. 表现在的时间。这种用法使句子在语气上较为委婉客气，能这样用的动词有：hope, want, wonder, think, intend 等。例如：

I wondered if you'd look after my mother when I'm absent.

我想知道我不在时你是否愿意照看我的母亲。

What did you want? (委婉)

What do you want? (较生硬)

D. 表示过去的习惯。例如：

We went to school together when we are boys, so we saw each other every day.

少年时代我们总是一起上学，所以我们每天都见面。

Wherever he traveled in those years, he wrote down what he saw and heard.

那些年里，无论他到哪里旅游，都会记下所见所闻。

③ 一般将来时。

shall(will) + 动词原形(shall 用于第一人称，will 用于第二、三人称，也用于第一人称)。

A. 表示将要发生的动作或存在的状态。例如：

He will graduate from the college next year. 他明年大学毕业。

Most probably I will go to the country next week. 下周我可能到该国去。

B. 表示将来反复发生的动作或存在的状态。例如：

The students will have five English classes per week this term.

本学期学生们每周要上 5 节英语课。

Spring will come again. 春天会重返人间。

C. 可以表示将来时的其他结构或时态及用法。

a. **be going to + 动词原形** 结构表示决定、打算要做什么事情或有迹象表明将要发生、可能会出现什么情况。例如：

I am going to buy a new coat this winter. 今年冬天我打算去买一件新外套。

Look at the cloud! It's going to rain. 看那云，天要下雨了。

**be going to** 和 **will** 的用法区别：

(a) **will** 表示说话人认为、相信、希望或假定要发生的事，不含任何具体时间，可以指遥远的将来；而 **be going to** 指有迹象表明某事即将发生或肯定会发生，通常表示很快就要发生的事。例如：

I believe China will become one of the richest countries in the world.

我相信，中国将会成为世界上最富有的国家之一。

Listen to the wind. We are going to have a rough crossing.

听那风声，我们横渡时一定困难很大。

He will get better. 他的病会好的。(即认为最终会恢复健康，而不是马上恢复健康)

He is going to get better. 他的病就要好了。(指有恢复的迹象)

(b) **be going to** 可以用在条件状语从句中表示将来，而 **will** 不能。例如：

If you are going to attend the meeting, you'd better leave now. (不用 will)

如果你要出席会议，最好现在就走。

b. 某些动词的现在进行时可以表示按计划或安排将要发生的事。常用的有：**work, meet, take, move, have, do, stay, arrive, leave** 等。例如：

I'm meeting Jack at the station at four tomorrow afternoon.

我明天下午 4 点钟要去车站接杰克。

We are having a meeting this morning.

今天上午我们要开会。

c. **be + 不定式** 结构表示计划、安排或用来征求意见。例如：

Am I to take over his work? 要我接管他的工作吗？

但是，如果不是人能安排的动作，就不能用 **be to do** 句型表示将要发生。例如：

I think I am to faint. (误，是否晕倒自己不能安排)

I think I am going to faint. (正)

d. be about + 不定式结构表示即将发生的动作，句中不可用表示未来时间的状语。

例如：

The talk is about to begin. (正)

The talk is about to begin soon. (误)

He is about to be transferred there. 他将调任到那里。

about to 意为“正要，马上就……”，be not about to 意为“不愿意……”。例如：

He is about to come out. Please wait a moment. 他马上就出来，请等一会儿。

John is not about to do that again. 约翰不愿意再做那件事了。

④ 现在进行时。

现在进行时的动词构成形式为 am(is, are) + 现在分词。

A. 表示现在或现阶段正在进行的动作或发生的事。例如：

It is snowing outside. 外面正在下雪。

She is learning English at college. 她目前在大学里学英语。

B. 表示某个按最近的计划或安排将要进行的动作或即将开始的动作。

常用的这类词有：go, leave, come, arrive, land, meet, move, return, start, stay, stop, do, dine, give, have, pay, join, punish, spend, sleep, take 等。例如：

He is meeting the manager tomorrow. 他明天要跟经理见面。

I am publishing a book this year. 我计划今年出一本书。

C. 动作动词与 always, forever, continually, constantly 等连用，表示动作的重复，这种动作可能使人感到厌倦或觉得不合情理。例如：

Tom is always coming late for class. 汤姆总是上课迟到。

She is always reading novels. 她总是读小说。(花时间太多了)

D. 有些表示感觉、感情、情绪、精神活动、拥有关系等的动词，一般不用进行时代，常见的这类词有：understand, remember, wonder, cost, have, resemble, exist, appreciate, care, desire, fear, detest, hate, like, love, mind, want, know, hope, wish, agree, believe, expect, forget, appear 显得, mean, perceive, realize, recognize, recollect, concern, consist, matter, seem, signify 意指, respect, think 认为, please 快乐, need, intend 意欲, forgive 宽恕, differ 不同于, prefer, despise 轻视, dislike, adore 爱慕, represent 代表, result 导致, stand 位于, remain 停留, own 拥有, look 看似, lie 位于, hold 持有, contain 包含, depend on, belong 等。例如：

She is resembling her mother. (误)

She resembles her mother. (正)

I am knowing he is wrong. (误)

I know he is wrong. (正)

E. 某些非延续性的动词也不可用于进行时态, 常见的这类词有: admit, decide, end, allow 允许, refuse, consent 答应, permit, receive, determine 决心, resolve 解决, deny, promise, accept, complete 等。例如:

He is denying that he has seen the wallet. (误)

He denies that he has seen the wallet. (正)

F. 表示反复多次。例如:

The boy is hitting the dog. 这个男孩一个劲地打狗。

The train is arriving late almost every day this winter.

这个冬天火车几乎每天都晚点。

⑤ 过去进行时。

过去进行时的动词构成形式为 was (were) + 现在分词。

A. 表示过去某一时刻或某阶段正在发生的动作。例如:

He was playing table tennis at five yesterday afternoon.

他昨天下午 5 点钟在打乒乓球。

They were building a dam last summer. 去年夏天他们在建大坝。

B. 不与时间状语连用时, 可以表示逐渐地变化和发展。例如:

It was getting dark. 天渐渐黑下来。

C. 表示按计划安排过去某时将发生的动作。例如:

They were leaving for New York a few days later. 他们几天后将去纽约。

D. 与 forever, continually, always, constantly 等连用, 表示某种感情色彩。例如:

She was always changing her mind. 她老是改变主意。(不满)

E. 表示委婉语气, 只限于 want, hope, wonder 等动词, 用以提出请求。例如:

I was wondering if you could help me.

I was hoping you could send me the book.

⑥ 将来进行时。

将来进行时的动词构成形式为 shall(will) be + 现在分词。

A. 表示将来某个时刻正在进行或持续的动作。例如:

What will you be doing this time tomorrow? 明天这个时候你将做什么?

I hope it won't rain tomorrow. 我希望明天不下雨。

B. 状态动词用于将来进行时, 强调持续状态为一时进行的或为短暂行为, 或刚刚开始。例如:

You will be forgetting your own name next. 这样下去, 你会连自己的名字都忘掉的。

The flashlight will be needing new battery soon. 手电筒很快需要换电池了。

⑦ 现在完成时。

现在完成时的动词构成形式为 have (has) + 过去分词。

A. 表示过去发生的动作或事情对现在的影响和产生的结果，着眼点是现在。现在完成时常与不确定的过去时间状语连用，如：yet, just, before, recently, once, lately 等；也同表示频度的时间状语连用，如：often, ever, never, sometimes, twice, on several occasions 等；也同包括现在时间在内的时间状语连用，如：now, today, this morning, this month, this year 等；但不能同特定的过去时间状语连用，如：in 1993, last year 等。例如：

She has lost her wallet. 她钱包丢了(她现在没钱花了。)

I haven't finished reading the book yet, so I can't return it to the library.

我还没有看完这本书，所以我不会把它归还图书馆。

B. 表示一个从过去某个时间开始，延续到现在，并可能继续下去的动作。常与表示一段时间的时间状语连用，如：so far, up to now, since, for a long time, up to now, up to the present, for the past (last) few years, these few days 等。例如：

He has worked here for over twenty years. 他在这里工作已经有 20 多年了。

I haven't seen him for many days. 我好多天没见他了。

C. 某些非延续性动词(动作一开始便结束的动词)，在现在完成时中，不能与表示一段时间的时间状语连用。常见的这类词有：come, go, begin, start, become, arrive, get(到达，收到)，reach, leave, join, end, die, find, lose, fall, jump, knock 等。例如：

She has been away for a month. (误)

She has gone away for a month. (正)

He has joined the army. (误)

He has been in the army for a long time. (正)

He has been an army time for a long time. (正)

D. since 引导的时间状语从句也可用现在完成时。如果由 since 引导的时间状语从句的动作或状态延续至今，通常要用现在完成时。这种用法中 since 表示的不是动作的结束，而是动作的延续。例如：

It's a long time since he lived there. 他离开那里已经很久了。

It's a long time since he has lived there. 他住在那里已经很久了。

E. “It (This) is (will be) the first (last...) time that...” 结构中的从句要求用现在完成时。例如：

This is the first time that I've heard her sing. 这是我第一次听她唱歌。

It will be the second time I've seen the film. 这将是第二次看这部电影。

F. “It (This) is the best (worst, most interesting) + 名词 + that...” 结构中的从句要求用现在完成时。例如：

It is the best film I've ever seen. 这是我看过的最好的电影。

This is the most interesting novel he has ever written. 这是他写的最有趣的小说。

## ⑧ 过去完成时。

过去完成时的动词构成形式为 had + 过去分词。

A. 表示在过去某个动作或某个具体时间之前已经发生、完成的动作和情况。例如：

**The play had already started when we got to the theatre.**

我们到达剧院时演出已经开始了。

**I could see from her face that she had received some good news.**

从她的脸上我可以看出她有什么高兴事儿。

B. 过去完成时常用在有 **hardly, scarcely, no sooner than** 等副词的句子中。例如：

**She had scarcely gone to bed when the bell rang.** 她一上床铃就响了。

**No sooner had they left the building than a bomb exploded.**

他们刚离开那座大楼，炸弹就爆炸了。

C. **intend, mean, hope, want, plan, suppose, expect, think** 等动词的过去完成时可以用来表示一个本来打算做而没有做的事情，这种用法也可以表示过去未曾实现的设想、意图或希望等，含有某种惋惜。例如：

**I had intended to call on you yesterday, but some one came to see me just when I was about to leave.**

我本来昨天要去看你的，但是刚要出门就有人来访。

**We had meant to tell her the news but found that she wasn't in.**

我们本想把这个消息告诉她的，但是发现她不在家。

D. 表示“过去的将来”某时刻之前已经完成的动作。例如：

**She made up her mind to go on trying until she had succeeded.**

她下定决心继续努力，直到成功。

**The plane would take off as soon as it had stopped raining.** 雨一停飞机就起飞了。

## ⑨ 将来完成时。

将来完成时的动词构成为 **shall (will) have + 过去分词**，表示将来某时之前已经完成的动作。例如：

**They will have been there for five years next February.**

到明年2月份，他们在那儿就呆了5年了。

## ⑩ 现在完成进行时。

现在完成进行时的动词构成形式为 **have (has) + been + 现在分词**。

A. 现在完成进行时表示一个从过去某个时间开始发生，一直延续到现在并可能继续下去的动作。例如：

**I have been waiting for an hour but she still hasn't come.**

我已经等了一个小时，但是她还没有来。

**We have been having fine weather for the past few days.**

过去的几天里天气一直很好。

B. 表示动作刚刚结束。例如：

— Sorry, I've kept you waiting. 对不起，让你久等了。

— It's all right. I've been reading newspaper. 没关系，我刚才一直在读报纸。

— Where have you been? 你刚才去哪儿了？

— I have been watering flowers in the garden. 我刚才一直在花园里浇花。

C. 表示某种感情色彩。例如：

I have been wanting to see you for a long time. 我一直都很想见你。

Who has been telling you such nonsense? 谁对你胡说八道了？

## 2) 特别要点精讲

### (1) 情态动词 + 动词完成形式

#### ① can (could) + 动词完成式。

A. 表示过去能做而没有做的事，有一种对过去未付诸实施的事情的惋惜。例如：

In those circumstances we could have done better.

在那样的情况下，我们本来可以做得更好的。

You could have been more considerate.

你们本可以做的更周到的。

B. 推测过去的某种行动。例如：

He is an hour late—he can have been late by fog.

他迟到了一个钟头——当然，他可能是被雾所阻。

He can't have been to your home. He doesn't know your address.

他不可能到过你家，他不知道你的地址。

#### ② may(might) + 动词完成式用于推测过去的行为。例如：

You may (might) have read about it in the papers.

你们可能已经从报纸上知道了这个消息。

If we had taken the other road, we might have arrived earlier.

如果走另外一条路，我们可能到得更早些。

③ must + 动词完成式表示对过去行为的推断，具有较大的可能性，意为“一定、想必”。例如：

You must have known what he wanted. 你一定知道他想要什么。

She must have read the book sometime in the past, or she couldn't answer the question so well. 她以前一定看过这本书，否则，她不可能回答得这么好。

#### ④ needn't + 动词完成式表示一种已经做过但并无必要的行为。例如：

You needn't have watered the flowers, for it is going to rain.

你本来不必浇花的，因为天要下雨了。(但却浇了)

We needn't tell him the news because he knew it already.

我们没有必要告诉他这件事，他已经知道了。

⑤ **should + 动词完成式。**

A. 此结构的肯定式表示应该做的事情而没有做，否定式表示不该发生的事却发生了。例如：

You should have given her more help. 你应该多给她一些帮助的。(但没有给)

She shouldn't have left the hospital so soon, for she had not yet recovered.

她还没有康复，不该那么早出院。

B. 表示推测，意为“可能”，但可能性较小。例如：

She should have finished the work by now. 到现在她可能已经做完了事情。

I think they should have arrived by this time. 我想现在他们可能已经到了。

## (2) 几组时态的比较

① 一般现在时和一般过去时。

一般现在时表示现在存在的状态和发生的动作；一般过去时表示过去存在的状态和发生的动作。例如：

Her father was a chemist. (生前，已去世)

Her father is a chemist. (尚健在)

How did you like the dancing? (舞蹈已看完)

How do you like the dancing? (仍在看的过程中或随便谈谈)

② 一般现在时和现在进行时的用法比较。

A. 一般现在时表示经常性的动作；现在进行时表示暂时性的动作。例如：

The computer is working perfectly. (暂时性的)

The computer works perfectly. (经常性的)

B. 一般现在时表示短暂性的动作；现在进行时表示持续性的动作。例如：

The bus is stopping. (渐渐停下来)

The bus stops. (迅速停下来)

C. 一般现在时表示永久性的动作；现在进行时表示短暂性的动作。例如：

She lives in Wuhan. (永久性的)

She is living in Wuhan. (短时间居住)

③ 过去进行时和一般过去时。

A. 过去进行时可以表示过去反复做的动作，而一般过去时表示只做一次的动作。

例如：

She was waving her hand. 她不断地挥手。

She waved her hand. 她挥了挥手。

The frog was jumping up and down. 青蛙不断地跳着。



The frog jumped up and down. 青蛙跳了一下。

B. leave, arrive, start, die 等的过去进行时表示“快要完成, 即将……”, 而一般过去时表示“已经完成”。例如:

The train was stopping. 火车快要停了。

The train stopped. 火车停了。

She was dying. 她快要死了。

She died. 她死了。

④ 现在完成进行时和现在完成时。

在与表示一段时间的状语连用时, 现在完成进行时和现在完成时都可以表示一个动作从过去某时开始延续到说话时刻, 并可能继续下去。在这一用法中往往可将两种结构换用。只是在特定的时候, 侧重点或语气有差异。

A. 现在完成时强调的是某个刚刚完成的动作, 或某个过去的动作对现在的影响或产生的结果, 也可以表示延续性; 现在完成进行时则强调动作的延续性, 有时表示临时性质。例如:

Her father has taught maths for ten years. (是否延续下去视上下文来定)

Her father has been teaching maths for ten years. (并将延续下去)

He has put coal on the fire. (这件事已经结束)

He has been putting coal on the fire. (一直在做这件事)

B. 现在完成进行时往往表示动作的重复, 现在完成时则不表示动作的重复性。例如:

Have you been meeting him recently? (最近经常见到他吗?)

Have you met him recently? (最近见到他了吗?)

C. 现在完成进行时有时含有感情色彩, 而现在完成时则是平铺直叙。例如:

What have you been doing? (惊异)

What have you done? (仅是一个问题)

We've been waiting for you for two hours. (口语化, 不耐烦)

We have waited for you for two hours. (说明一个事实)

⑤ 一般现在时和将来进行时。

一般将来时既可以表示“将来”, 也可以表示“意图、意志”, 而将来进行时则表示“纯粹的将来”, 指说话者一种无意图的动作。例如:

Tom won't cut the grass. 汤姆拒绝割草。(有意图)

Tom won't be cutting the grass. 汤姆将不割草。(无意图, 仅陈述一个事实)

I'll do my best. 我愿尽最大的努力。(意愿或将来)

I'll be doing my best. 我将尽最大的努力。(纯粹的将来)

## II. 学法指导

### • 用“四字归纳法”学习情态动词 •

答非所问：情态动词可以帮助构成一般疑问句，但有些一般疑问句“问”和“答”所用的情态动词可以不一致。例如：

Must I do it again? 我必须再做一遍吗？

No, you needn't. 不，你不必了。

Need you go yet? 你一定要去吗？

Yes, I must. 是的，我必须去。

时非所指：情态动词所用时态与句子时态可以不一致。例如：

I often ask him whether he could help me .

我经常问他是否可以帮帮我。(could 用来指现在时)

Might I make suggestion?

我可以提出一个建议吗？(might 过去式指现在)

一词两用：情态动词 need 和 dare 可以用作实义动词。例如：

Father sent me the book, so I didn't need to write to him for it.

父亲把那本书寄来了，所用我不必为此给他写信了。(need 为实义动词)

Father sent me the book, so I needn't have written to him for it.

父亲把那本书寄来了，所以我本不该为此写信给他的。(need 为情态动词)

I wonder whether he dare try. 我不知他是否敢于一试。(dare 为情态动词)

I dare you not to say that again. 我谅你不敢再说那话。(dare 为实义动词)

词词多义：情态动词可以有多种意义。例如：

You may take the book home. 你可以把这本书带回家。(may 表示可以做的事)

May heaven protect you! 愿上天保佑你。(may 表示祝愿)

You can borrow two books at a time from the library.

一次可以从图书馆借两本书。(can 表示许可)

I can not guess whose book it is.

很难猜想这是谁写的书。(can 表示可能性)

同义辨义：情态动词与某些实义动词有相似的意义，但意义和用法上有差异。

#### must 和 have to

must 强调主观看法，表示主观上认为有必要做某事；have to 强调客观需要，表示因客观环境或事态促使而不得不做某事。have to 可用于不同的时态；而 must 一般只用于现在时。must 可以表示对过去情况的猜测，而 have to 不能。例如：

I must learn another language.(主观想法: I want to) 我想再学习一门语言。

I have to learn another language.(客观需要: 如身为一个外交官) 我不得不再学习一门语言。

I have to(must)leave now. 我现在得走了。

They had to put off the sports meet because of the bad weather. 因为天气不好, 他们不得不将运动会推迟。

There must be something wrong with the machine. 机器准是出了毛病。

### can 和 be able to

A. can 一般用于现在时和过去时, be able to 还可用于将来时态。例如:

Will you be able to come? 你能来吗?

She can speak French. 她会讲法语。

B. 除非用于条件句中, could 不可以用来指过去的某一次成就。例如:

When the boat upset, they were able to swim to the bank. (正)

小船翻覆时, 他们游泳抵达了岸上。

When the boat upset, they could swim to the bank. (误)

否定用法: 情态动词可以帮助构成否定句, 但否定句与肯定句所用情态动词可以不一致。例如:

He must be on the sports ground. 他一定在操场上。(表示推测, 意为“一定, 准是”)

He can not be on the sports ground. 他不可能在操场上。

He must get up at five. 他有必要五点起床。(表示有必要, 意为“应当, 必须”)

He need not get up at five. 他没有必要五点起床。

He must park the car here. 他必须把车停在这里。(表示命令, 意为“必须”)

He must not park the car here. 他不准把车停在这里。

He need not park the car here. 他不必把车停在这里。

时态限定: 部分情态动词只能用于规定的时态。如 must 和 can 一词可用于现在时, 表达某些特定时态可借用同义的非情态动词。例如:

We must leave early. 我们必须早点走。(现在时)

We had to leave early. 我们必须早点走。(过去时)

I can stay at home tomorrow. 我明天会呆在家里。(现在时)

I will be able to stay at home. 我明天会呆在家里。(将来时)

## III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. My train arrives in New York at eight o'clock tonight. The plane I would like to take

from there \_\_\_\_\_ by then.

- A. will have left    B. would leave    C. had left    D. has left

答案: A

提示: 前一个句子用一般现在时, 表示按规定和计划将要发生的动作, 后一个句子应该用将来完成时。

译文: 我乘坐的火车将于今晚 8 点钟到达纽约。到那时, 我准备搭乘的班机也已经飞走。

2. Research findings show we spend about two hours dreaming every night, no matter what we \_\_\_\_\_ during the day.

- A. must have done    B. would have done  
C. should have done    D. may have done

答案: D

提示: may + 完成时用于推测过去的行为。

译文: 研究结果表明, 我们每晚有两个小时在做梦, 而不管我们白天做了什么。

3. She ought to stop work; she has a headache because she \_\_\_\_\_ too long.

- A. has been reading    B. had read    C. is reading    D. read

答案: A

提示: 现在完成进行时表示过去刚刚完成的动作, 其结果对现在有影响或有联系。

译文: 她应该停止工作, 她头痛是因为她已经阅读了太长时间。

4. The sale usually takes places outside the house, with the audience \_\_\_\_\_ on beaches, chairs or boxes.

- A. having seated    B. seating  
C. seated    D. having being seated

答案: C

提示: 动词 seat 是及物动词, 如: seat sb. on the beach.

译文: 买卖通常在室外进行, 观众们坐在凳子、椅子或箱子上。

5. This kind of glasses manufactured by experienced craftsman \_\_\_\_\_ comfortably.

- A. is worn    B. wears    C. wearing    D. are worn

答案: B

提示: wear 在这里是不及物动词, 意思是“穿起来……”。

译文: 这种有经验的工匠制造的眼镜戴起来很舒服。

6. “May I speak to your manager Mr. Williams at five o’clock tonight?”

“I’m sorry. Mr. Williams \_\_\_\_\_ to a conference long before then.”

- A. will have gone    B. had gone    C. would have gone    D. has gone

答案: A



答案: C

提示: will 表示推测, by 引导的时间状语多用完成时态。

译文: 现在他们可能已经到达了纽约。

13. I decided to go to the library as soon as I \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. finish what I did                      B. finish what did  
C. would finish what I was doing      D. finished what I was doing

答案: D

提示: 时间状语从句用一般过去时, 与主句的时态一致。宾语从句用过去进行时表示“手头正在进行的工作”。

译文: 我决定做完手头上的工作就到图书馆去。

14. We \_\_\_\_\_ our breakfast when an old man came to the door.

- A. just have had    B. have just had    C. just had              D. had just had

答案: D

提示: 从句为一般过去时, 主句动作在从句动作之前发生, 表示过去的过去。

译文: 当那位老人进门时, 我们刚吃完早饭。

15. After looking for a whole morning, I realized that my watch \_\_\_\_\_ on the table all the time.

- A. had been lying    B. had been lain    C. have been lying    D. were lain

答案: A

提示: 从句表示过去的过去, 状态延续了整个上午, 用过去完成进行时。

译文: 寻找了整整一个上午后, 我意识到手表一直放在桌子上。

16. I will help you when I \_\_\_\_\_ my work.

- A. finish              B. will have finish    C. will finish              D. finished

答案: D

提示: 在条件状语从句中, 用现在完成时代替将来完成时。

译文: 我做完作业后就帮你。

17. What were you doing just now while I \_\_\_\_\_ the experiment?

- A. shall be making    B. made    C. was making    D. had made

答案: C

提示: 表示动作正在进行中。

译文: 刚才我做实验的时候你在做什么?

18. A body of volunteers \_\_\_\_\_ to aid the helpless in their struggle for survival.

- A. have been organized                      B. has been organized  
C. have being                                  D. has being organized

答案: B



- would be investigated.
- A. directed      B. have directed      C. am directed      D. was directed
7. She should very much like to have gone to that party of yours, but \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. she is not invited      B. she has not been invited  
C. she will not be invited      D. she was not invited
8. She will come to call on you the moment she \_\_\_\_\_ her work.
- A. has finished      B. finished      C. had finished      D. will finish
9. A friend of mine returned to his house after a holiday, only to find it \_\_\_\_\_ broken into.
- A. be      B. had      C. was      D. had been
10. Mary said she \_\_\_\_\_ up to page 25.
- A. reads      B. has read      C. read      D. had read
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ you that I think you are making a great mistakes.
- A. will tell      B. am telling      C. told      D. have been telling
12. The Curies discovered radium after they \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. were married      B. had been married  
C. married      D. have married
13. I agree with you that David is a clever guy, but I think he \_\_\_\_\_ very foolish just now.
- A. had been      B. has been      C. is being      D. was
14. Don't take Helen's remarks too seriously, she is so upset that I don't think she \_\_\_\_\_ what she is saying.
- A. really knows      B. really knew      C. is really knowing      D. has really known
15. I can't give him an answer before I \_\_\_\_\_ carefully.
- A. will think it over      B. have been thinking it  
C. have thought it over      D. thought it over
16. Many a student in that school \_\_\_\_\_ that three-dimensional film.
- A. have seen      B. see      C. are seeing      D. has seen
17. Long ago, Mr. Smith \_\_\_\_\_ in Beijing for three years.
- A. lived      B. has lived      C. had lived      D. had been living
18. By December 15th, we \_\_\_\_\_ English for three months.
- A. will have been studied      B. will be studying  
C. have studied      D. will have been studying
19. When I \_\_\_\_\_ a thousand English words, shall I be able to read an English newspaper?



- A. shall learn      B. had learned      C. learned      D. have learned
20. Bill, along with the three other men, \_\_\_\_\_ to represent the union at the next meeting.
- A. are      B. were      C. is      D. was

• 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. Jim expected \_\_\_\_\_ nobody in the room.
- A. there being      B. there been      C. there to be      D. there be
2. The naughty boy! He \_\_\_\_\_ where he leaves his things.
- A. always forgets      B. will always forget  
C. is always forgetting      D. has always forgotten
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ to go to Beijing today, but he postponed the trip when he heard that there would be a downpour at noon.
- A. was intending      B. would intend      C. was intended      D. had intended
4. Bus fares \_\_\_\_\_ recently in Nanjing.
- A. have been risen      B. have been arisen      C. have been rising      D. have been raised
5. I hope he'll soon \_\_\_\_\_ his disappointment and be cheerful again.
- A. get up      B. get through      C. get away      D. get over
6. Absorbed in reading a book on the bus, he had his wallet \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. stealing      B. to steal      C. have been stolen      D. stolen
7. This pen \_\_\_\_\_ his; he was not here in the morning.
- A. mustn't be      B. can not be      C. should not be      D. may not be
8. You need to \_\_\_\_\_ before posting it.
- A. have the letter stamping      B. have the letter to stamp  
C. have the letter stamped      D. be stamped your letter
9. The old professor permitted his friend \_\_\_\_\_ his laboratory.
- A. for using      B. to use      C. to be use      D. use
10. The book is borrowed from a friend. You \_\_\_\_\_ your children put dots and lines here and there.
- A. shouldn't be letting      B. needn't have let  
C. shouldn't have let      D. ought to not have let
11. Many years ago, Jim \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris with his uncle for a long period of time.
- A. had been living      B. had lived      C. lived      D. has been living
12. They \_\_\_\_\_ the trip until the rain stopped.

- A. continued      B. didn't continue      C. hadn't continued      D. would continue
13. You shouldn't have asked the boy to run across the street to buy cigarettes, he \_\_\_\_\_ by a passing car.  
A. may be knocked down      B. should have been knocked off  
C. might have been knocked down      D. will have been knocked down
14. The girl even won't have her lunch before she \_\_\_\_\_ her homework.  
A. will finish      B. finishes      C. had finished      D. finished
15. The local peasants gave the soldiers clothes and food without which they \_\_\_\_\_ of hunger and cold.  
A. would die      B. will die      C. would be dead      D. would have died
16. After driving for thirty miles, she suddenly realized that she \_\_\_\_\_ in the wrong direction.  
A. was driving      B. has been driving      C. had been driving      D. drove
17. It is not like Jack to be unfriendly. So he \_\_\_\_\_ you when you called.  
A. had not seen      B. should not have seen  
C. must not have seen      D. did not see
18. By the time you get back, great changes \_\_\_\_\_ in this area.  
A. will take place      B. will be taken place  
C. are going to take place      D. will have taken place
19. On his next birthday he \_\_\_\_\_ married for ten years.  
A. has been      B. will be      C. will have been      D. would have been
20. Those who have applied for the post \_\_\_\_\_ in the office.  
A. are being interviewed      B. are interviewing  
C. interviewing      D. to be interviewing

• 模拟自测题 •

1. He was a diligent young scholar and \_\_\_\_\_ the latest development in many fields.  
A. was well informed to      B. has well informed  
C. well informed      D. was well informed about
2. Jack was so drunk that he fell off the bike and \_\_\_\_\_ by the roadside until the next morning.  
A. laid      B. lied      C. had lain      D. lay
3. The alarm clock didn't ring this morning. You \_\_\_\_\_ it last night.

- A. need to have forgotten to wind      B. have forgotten wind  
C. ought to have forgotten to wind      D. must have forgotten to wind
4. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere in the past.  
A. to meet him      B. meet him      C. having met him      D. to have been met
5. \_\_\_\_\_, we should be economical and put money to the best possible use.  
A. Beginning with      B. To begin with  
C. It is beginning with      D. When beginning with
6. They were \_\_\_\_\_ when I got there.  
A. already      B. ready for leaving  
C. in the point to leave      D. about to leave
7. We came early and had to wait two hours before the ceremony began. We \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. should not hurry      B. must not have hurried  
C. need not hurry      D. need not have hurried
8. \_\_\_\_\_ come out at night?  
A. Does he dare      B. Dare he to      C. Dares he      D. Dare he
9. Your window wants \_\_\_\_\_; you'd better have it \_\_\_\_\_ this week.  
A. cleaning...do      B. to be cleaned...do  
C. cleaning...done      D. being cleaned...done
10. They tried every way possible \_\_\_\_\_ the child, but it was too late.  
A. saving      B. to save      C. to have saved      D. to be saving
11. I recollected \_\_\_\_\_ his name somewhere in the newspaper.  
A. to see      B. see      C. having seen      D. being seen
12. The original plan \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. needs not be changed      B. doesn't need changed  
C. need not to be changed      D. doesn't need to be changed
13. The concert began before we \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. were seating      B. seated  
C. were being seated      D. were seated
14. Gradually she \_\_\_\_\_ to see the meaning of his words.  
A. become      B. has become      C. came      D. has to come
15. You'd better tell me beforehand if \_\_\_\_\_ go with her.  
A. you'll rather not      B. you won't rather  
C. you'd rather not      D. you'd rather not to
16. Mr. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ volleyball in the afternoon, but now his leg wounded.  
A. used to playing      B. was used to play



- D. the government not to inform them of the truth
30. Do you object \_\_\_\_\_ with you tonight?  
A. that I stay      B. for my staying      C. to that I shall stay      D. to my staying
31. John \_\_\_\_\_ now for the light in his room is still on.  
A. must study      B. must be studying  
C. must have studied      D. would have studied
32. Father doesn't know I have been gambling, if he found out, I think \_\_\_\_\_ me out of home.  
A. he will drive      B. he drove  
C. he'd drive      D. he must have been driving
33. The sportsmen \_\_\_\_\_ training for three hours when the coach told them to break off for the rest and supper.  
A. have been      B. are      C. had been      D. were
34. The prices \_\_\_\_\_ gone up all the time in the past few years so that complaints can be heard everywhere.  
A. keep      B. kept      C. have kept      D. are
35. The Yellow River \_\_\_\_\_ to be the cradle of the Chinese nation.  
A. can say      B. can be said      C. has said      D. said
36. I would like to do it right now, but I \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
A. hadn't      B. didn't have      C. will have no      D. have no
37. It was not until then that I came to know that the earth \_\_\_\_\_ around the sun.  
A. moved      B. has moved      C. will move      D. move
38. Jack was fined for speeding. He \_\_\_\_\_ so fast.  
A. should have driven      B. could have driven  
C. shouldn't have driven      D. wouldn't have driven
39. When she graduate from the college this summer. She \_\_\_\_\_ here for four years.  
A. will study      B. will be studying      C. will have studied      D. studies
40. The roads are all wet. It \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
A. must rain      B. must be raining      C. had to rain      D. must have rained

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. C      2. D      3. A      4. D      5. B      6. D      7. D      8. A      9. D      10. D

11. D 12. C 13. D 14. A 15. C 16. D 17. A 18. D 19. D 20. C

### 单项语法坡度练习

1. C 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. C  
11. C 12. B 13. C 14. B 15. D 16. C 17. C 18. D 19. C 20. A

### 模拟自测题

1. D 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. D 7. D 8. D 9. C 10. B  
11. C 12. D 13. D 14. C 15. C 16. C 17. C 18. D 19. C 20. C  
21. B 22. C 23. D 24. D 25. C 26. D 27. D 28. C 29. B 30. D  
31. B 32. C 33. C 34. C 35. B 36. D 37. D 38. C 39. C 40. D

## 动词语态(2)

语态是动词的一种形式,英语动词有主动和被动两种语态。主动语态 (active voice) 表示主语是动作的执行者。被动语态 (passive voice) 表示主语是动作的承受者。例如: We clean the classroom every day. 句中 we 是谓语动词 clean 这个动词的执行者,因此谓语动词 clean 采用主动语态形式。如果变为 The classroom is cleaned (by us) every day. 句中主语 the classroom 是谓语动词动作的承受者,这时谓语动词采用 is cleaned 这种被动语态形式。原主动语态中的主语 we 在被动语态结构中变为 us 作介词 by 的宾语, by us 短语在句中作状语。

### I. 语法精要讲解

#### 1) 一般要点精讲

##### (1) 被动语态的构成与表现形式

被动语态由助动词 be 加及物动词的过去分词构成。be 有时态、人称和数的变化。现以动词 give 为例,各种时态被动语态的具体表现形式见下表:

时间 \ 体	一般	进行	完成
现在	is (am, are) given	is (am, are) being given	has (have) been given
过去	was (were) given	was (were) being given	had been given
将来	will (shall) be given	——	——
过去将来	would (should) be given	——	——

理论上讲,被动语态的时态可以有 12 种,但是实际常用的时态只有上表中的 8 种。

## (2) 语态基本用法

被动语态常用于以下情况:

① 当不知道谁是动作的执行者时。例如:

**Printing was introduced into Europe from China.**

印刷术是从中国传入欧洲的。

**His car was stolen a week ago.**

一个星期前他的汽车被盗。

② 当认为没有必要指出或不想指出谁是动作执行者时。例如:

**Television ads are usually repeated over and over again.**

电视广告通常一遍又一遍地重复播放。

**“Harry Potter” has been translated into Chinese.**

《哈里·波特》已经翻译成中文了。

③ 当强调或突出动作承受者时; 如果需要同时指出动作的执行者, 可以用 **by** 加动作执行者的名词或代词。例如:

**The building will be designed by Dr. Ford.**

这座建筑物将由福特博士设计。

**Her plan has not been approved by the management.**

她的计划尚未得到管理部门的批准。

## 2) 特别要点精讲

除了助动词 **be** 加及物动词的过去分词这种最常见的被动结构外, 还有一些特殊结构。

### (1) 含有情态动词的被动结构

它的构成是: 情态动词+**be**+及物动词的过去分词。例如:

**The goods must be shipped before the end of October.**

货物必须 10 月底以前装船。

**The books may be kept for two weeks. After that they must be returned to the library.**

这些书可以借两周, 两周之后必须归还图书馆。

### (2) 短语动词的被动语态结构

所谓短语动词, 指的是某些动词和介词、副词或名词+介词等构成的固定词组。常见的有以下几种形式:

① 动词+介词。例如: **depend on; look after**

② 动词+副词。例如: **put off; bring about**

③ 动词+副词+介词。例如: **do away with; put up with**

④ 动词+名词+介词。例如: **take care of ; make use of**

短语动词应作为一个整体看待, 变为被动语态时不能丢掉构成短语动词的介词、

副词或名词+介词等成分。例如：

He has turned off the TV. 他已经关了电视机。

The TV has been turned off. 电视机已经关了。

The nurse takes good care of the children. 保育员很好地照顾孩子。

The children are taken good care of by the nurse. 孩子们受到保育员很好的照顾。

They will put off the meeting till Friday. 他们要把会议推迟到星期五。

The meeting will be put off till Friday. 会议要推迟到星期五。

We have sent for the doctor. 我们已派人请医生了。

The doctor has been sent for. 已派人请医生去了。

People looked down upon women in the past. 过去人们歧视妇女。

Women were looked down upon in the past. 妇女过去受人歧视。

We shall make full use of every minute. 我们要充分利用每分钟。

Every minute will be full used of. 每分钟都要充分利用起来。

We cannot put up with such a rude behavior. 我们不能容忍这样的粗鲁举止。

Such a rude behavior cannot be put up with. 不能容忍这样的粗鲁举止。

### (3) 有两个宾语的主动结构变被动结构

有两个宾语的主动结构变被动结构时，通常将其中指人的宾语变成主语，另一个仍然作为宾语。例如：

We allowed him an hour to get to the airport. 我们给他一小时的时间到达机场。

He was allowed an hour to get to the airport. 允许他一小时的时间到达机场。

An hour was allowed him to get to the airport. 他可有一小时的时间到达机场。

He gave me many books yesterday. 他昨天给了我许多书。

I was given many books (by him) yesterday. 他昨天给了我许多书。

Many books were given to me (by him) yesterday. 他昨天给了我许多书。

### (4) get+过去分词构成的被动语态

在此结构中，get 通常表示动作的结果而非动作本身；也常用于表示突然发生、未曾料到的事态，或者用于表示“最后终于”出现某种事态。其中的 get 虽然起着助动词的作用，但在构成疑问句时却需要借助于助动词 do。例如：

Did your question get answered? 你的问题得到回答了吗？

How did the window get broken? 窗子是怎么被打破的？

### (5) 被动语态与“be + 过去分词作表语结构”的区别

被动语态强调动作，有动态倾向；系表结构描述状态，有静态倾向。例如：

The article was written with great care. 这篇文章是认真写的。(被动)

This article was well written. 这篇文章写得很好。(系表)

The glass was broken by a little boy. 玻璃杯是一个小男孩打碎的。(被动)



The glass was broken. 玻璃杯碎了。(系表)

### (6) 主动形式表示被动意义

① 在 need, want, require, deserve, bear, stand 等动词后加动名词的主动形式表示被动的意思。例如:

She wants comforting. 她需要(别人)安慰(她)。

Jeans bears washing. 牛仔裤耐洗。

He deserves praising. 他值得表扬。

② 感官动词 feel, look, smell, sound, taste 等常用主动形式表示被动的意思。注意这类动词后面常常跟的是形容词,而不是副词。例如:

The silk feels soft. 这丝绸摸起来很软。

The fish tastes good. 这鱼味道很好。

The idea sounds great. 这主意听起来不错。

③ 不及物动词 close, open, write, sell, wash, drive, iron, wash, pick 等常用主动形式表示被动的意思。例如:

The shoes sell quickly. 这种鞋卖得很快。

The car drives easily. 这车很容易开。

The fields flooded. 地让水淹了。

④ 形容词 easy, difficult, hard, cheap, expensive, fit, nice, dangerous, comfortable, exciting, funny, light, heavy, important, good, interesting 等后面接主动形式的不定式表示被动的意思。例如:

The text is difficult to understand. 这篇课文难以理解。

The well water is fit to drink. 这井水好喝。

## II. 学法指导

### • 动词被动语态使用“五忌” •

一忌将 see, watch, notice, feel, make, let, have 等感官动词或使役动词后作主语补足语的不定式省略 to。例如:

He was made to stay at home. 他被留在家里。

He was seen to enter the classroom. 看见他进了教室。

二忌将把表示材料、地点、范围的介词 with, in, to 误用为表示动作执行者的介词 by 来表示。例如:

The top of the mountain is covered with ice and snow. 山顶上覆盖着冰雪。

English is taught in our school. 我们学校教英语。

The writer is well known to us all. 我们都知道那位作者。

三忌将反身代词改为被动语态的主语。例如：

正确：He taught himself English. 他自学了英语。

错误：Himself was taught English.

四忌将否定词用作否定式被动句中中介词 by 的宾语。例如：

正确：Nobody can lift the huge stone. 没有人能举起那块大石头。

正确：The huge stone can not be lifted by anybody.

错误：The huge stone can not be lifted by nobody.

五忌将短语动词拆开。例如：

正确：The children are taken good care of by them. 孩子们受到了他们很好的照顾。

错误：Good care of the children is taken by them.

### III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. The gray building is where the workers live, and the white one is where the spare parts \_\_\_\_\_.

A. are producing

B. are produced

C. produced

D. being produced

答案：B

提示：where 引导主语为 spare parts 的表语从句，其谓语动词的动作对象正是从句的主语，所以两者间为被动关系，应该用被动语态。

译文：那座灰楼是工人们住的地方，而白的那座是生产零件的地方。

2. Sir Denis, who is 78, has made it known that much of his collection \_\_\_\_\_ to the nation.

A. has left

B. is to leave

C. leaves

D. is to be left

答案：D

提示：收藏品和捐献之间应是被动关系，所以空格内应填入被动式。同时，捐献的动作是在将来发生，因此要求时态用将来时。

译文：78 岁的丹尼斯爵士已经宣布将他的大部分收藏品捐献给国家。

3. Great as Newton was, many of his ideas \_\_\_\_\_ today and are being modified by the work of scientists of our time.

A. are to challenge

B. may be challenged

C. have been challenged

D. are challenging

答案: C

提示: challenge 是个及物动词, 在本句中, 它的动作对象是主语 many of his ideas。因此空格内的谓语应选择被动式。从句子的意思来看, 空格内的谓语是一个延续到现在的动作, 应该用现在完成时。

译文: 尽管牛顿很伟大, 但他的许多思想今天都受到了挑战, 并且被现代科学家的工作所修正。

4. Once environmental damage \_\_\_\_\_, it takes many years for the system to recover.

A. had done

B. is to do

C. does

D. is done

答案: D

提示: 本句中从句部分的主语中心词是 damage, 它与空格内应该填入的词 do 是动宾关系, 因此空格内应使用被动语态。do damage 意为“造成破坏”。

译文: 环境一旦遭到破坏, 需要多年时间才能恢复过来。

5. The bed sheets and pillows will want \_\_\_\_\_, I suppose.

A. washing

B. to wash

C. being washed

D. to have washed

答案: A

提示: 在动词 need, want, require, deserve, bear, stand 等动词后加动名词主动形式表示被动的意思。

译文: 我想这些床单和枕头需要清洗。

6. Most environmental problems exist because adequate measures for preventing them \_\_\_\_\_ taken in the past.

A. was not

B. were not

C. were not being

D. being not

答案: B

提示: 从句的主语 measures 是复数。

译文: 大多数环境污染问题的存在是因为过去没有采取适当的保护措施。

7. The subject of these lectures \_\_\_\_\_ by the lecture committee.

A. announces

B. have been announced

C. announced

D. has been announced

答案: D

提示: 本句主语是单数名词 subject, 所以谓语动词也应用单数。

译文: 演讲委员会已宣布了这些演讲的题目。

8. My pictures \_\_\_\_\_ until next week.

A. won't develop

B. aren't developing

C. don't develop

D. won't be developed

答案: D



它的过去式和过去分词与现在式同形。

译文：这本字典花了我五块钱。

14. Enough \_\_\_\_\_ on how to take useful things out of rubbish, so much for today.

- A. has said            B. was said            C. has been said        D. will be said

答案：C

提示：被动语态的现在完成时形式，由 so much for today 来表明说话者着眼于现在的情况，侧重于现在的效果。

译文：关于如何变废为宝的问题已经说得够多的了，今天就到此为止。

15. The Smiths \_\_\_\_\_ rooms in the hotel, for their house \_\_\_\_\_ in the explosion.

- A. were given...had been destroyed    B. gave...destroyed  
C. was given...was destroyed          D. gave...had been destroyed

答案：A

提示：根据上下文的意思判断，第一个空用一般过去时态被动语态，侧重的是过去发生的某一动作；for 引导的从句中谓语动词表示的动作是发生在主句动作之前，是“过去的过去”。故用过去完成时态。

译文：史密斯一家被安排住在旅馆，因为他们家的房屋在那次爆炸事故中被毁了。

16. The little boy \_\_\_\_\_ play the piano three hours a day when he was six years old.

- A. was made            B. was made to        C. made                D. made to

答案：B

提示：英语中，感官意义的动词如：see, hear, watch, notice, observe, feel, smell 和表示“致使”意义的动词如：have, make, let 等后跟不定式作宾语补语时，不定式可省 to，但当这类结构在转化为被动结构时，to 要加上去。

译文：那个小男孩 6 岁时每天被迫弹 3 个小时的钢琴。

17. No sooner had elections moved through the wire than an electric current \_\_\_\_\_ generated.

- A. is                    B. was                    C. had been            D. has been

答案：B

提示：在 no sooner ... than ... 结构中，主句通常用过去完成时，从句用一般过去时。另外，no sooner 位于句首，句子要倒装。

译文：电子在导线里运动就产生了电流。

18. A Chinese man-made earth satellite was reported to \_\_\_\_\_ to the orbit.

- A. have been sent                    B. send  
C. will be sent                        D. have been sending

答案: A

提示: 此句是被动结构的非限定形式, 而且非限定动词 send 所表示的动作发生在限定动词即谓语动词 report 之前, 具有“先时性”。因此, 用不定式的完成形式。

译文: 据报道, 中国的一颗人造地球卫星已被发射升空, 进入轨道。

19. I think much attention \_\_\_\_\_ your pronunciation.

- A. must be paid to                      B. ought be paid to  
C. must pay to                            D. should be paid by

答案: A

提示: 此题考查情态动词的被动结构。

译文: 我认为你应多注意你的发音。

20. When I returned to my childhood place, I was distressed to find that all the apple trees \_\_\_\_\_ down.

- A. were cut                      B. cut                      C. had been cut                      D. had cut

答案: C

提示: 当主句的谓语动词采用一般过去时, 从句的谓语动词应该用过去时态。tree 与 cut 是被动关系, 且 cut 发生在 return 之前, 故采用过去完成时的被动语态。

译文: 当我回到童年成长的地方, 我沮丧地发现, 所有的苹果树都被砍光了。

21. A candidate for the post \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.

- A. is interviewing                      B. being interviewing  
C. is being interviewing                      D. interviewing

答案: C

提示: 本题考查被动语态进行时。四个备选答案中只有 C 是被动形式, 所以 C 为正确答案。

译文: 这一职位的候选人正在接受采访。

22. Those who consider themselves always in the right \_\_\_\_\_ by all the students at our college.

- A. is looked down                      B. are looked down  
C. is looked down upon                      D. are looked down upon

答案: D

提示: 本题考查被动语态。本句的主语是 those, 所以谓语动词应该用复数, 且句子中出现了 by, 所以应用被动语态。

译文: 我们大学的所有学生都蔑视那些自以为是的家伙。

23. Research \_\_\_\_\_ all over the world into the possible cause of cancer in the past twenty years.

- A. was made                                      B. had been made

C. has been made

D. has been making

答案: C

提示: 本题考查被动语态的现在完成时, in the past twenty years 是典型的现在完成时的时间状语。research 是 make 的宾语, 所以应该用被动语态的现在完成时。

译文: 在过去的 20 年里, 全世界都在研究诱发癌症的原因。

24. Orchestral instruments \_\_\_\_\_ under the following types: strings, woodwind, brass, and percussion.

A. grouped

B. can group

C. can be grouped

D. to be grouped

答案: C

提示: 本题考查时态和语态。本句所表述的是一般事实, 谓动词应该用一般现在时, 且 instruments 和 group 是被动关系, 所以应该选 C。

译文: 交响乐团的乐器主要有以下几种类型: 弦乐器、木管乐器、铜管乐器和打击乐器。

25. A series of accidents \_\_\_\_\_ lately.

A. has been reported

B. had been reported

C. are being reported

D. is reported

答案: A

提示: 本句考查时态及语态。lately 近来, 最近, 与现在完成时连用。a series 是句子的实际主语, 为单数, 所以谓动词应该用单数。

译文: 最近媒体报道了一系列的事故。

## IV. 考级阶梯性练习

### • 单项语法基础练习 •

1. "Are we about to have dinner?" "Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_ in the dining room."

A. is serving

B. serves

C. served

D. is being served

2. Gold \_\_\_\_\_ in California in the nineteenth century.

A. was discovered

B. was discover

C. has been discovered

D. had been discovered

3. All planes \_\_\_\_\_ checked before departure.

A. will

B. will be

C. will have

D. will been

4. "We're still looking for Thomas." "Hasn't he \_\_\_\_\_ yet?"

- A. found            B. to found            C. being founded            D. been found
5. The University of Michigan, which was \_\_\_\_\_ in 1817, is located Ann Arbor, Michigan.
- A. found            B. find            C. founded            D. being found
6. Mail \_\_\_\_\_ daily to all parts of the United States not only by the government but also by private carriers.
- A. send            B. sends            C. is sent            D. is sended
7. Franklin D. Roosevelt became President of the United States in 1933 and \_\_\_\_\_ three times before he died in 1945.
- A. has reelected            B. had reelected  
C. has been reelected            D. had been reelected
8. Three ships \_\_\_\_\_ built by last September.
- A. was            B. were            C. has been            D. had been
9. When water is heated, it \_\_\_\_\_ into vapor.
- A. will be changed            B. is changed  
C. will change            D. is changing
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ warmly \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as we got there.
- A. were welcome            B. were welcomed  
C. would be welcome            D. are welcomed
11. Both English and Japanese \_\_\_\_\_ in our school.
- A. teach            B. are teaching            C. are taught            D. have taught
12. These dictionaries can't \_\_\_\_\_ out of the library.
- A. take            B. be take            C. be taken            D. to be taken
13. "How often \_\_\_\_\_ your clothes \_\_\_\_\_ ?" "I think they ought to \_\_\_\_\_ twice a week at least."
- A. are...washed...be washed            B. are...washed...wash  
C. are...washed...have washed            D. have...been washed...be washed
14. My watch \_\_\_\_\_ broken. It \_\_\_\_\_ at the shop.
- A. is...is repaired            B. is...is being repaired  
C. has...is being repaired            D. has...has been repaired
15. Great changes \_\_\_\_\_ place in my hometown since 1980.
- A. have been taken            B. took  
C. have taken            D. have had taken
16. Today is Beryl's wedding day. She \_\_\_\_\_ to Harry.
- A. was just married            B. had just married





- C. have been shut up                      D. had been shut up
10. He noticed the helicopter hovering over the field. Then to his astonishment, he saw a rope ladder \_\_\_\_\_ out and three men climbing down it.  
A. throwing                                      B. being thrown  
C. having thrown                                D. having been thrown
11. He was asked to take on the chairmanship of the society, \_\_\_\_\_ insufficiently popular with all members.  
A. having considered                            B. was considered  
C. was being considered                        D. being considered
12. Since the mid-1960's considerable research \_\_\_\_\_ in embryo transplants in many countries.  
A. has carried out                                B. was carried out  
C. carried out                                      D. has been carried out
13. He was \_\_\_\_\_ to be clever but dishonest.  
A. thought                                        B. thinking  
C. they thought                                  D. thought as
14. The boat with 300 men, women and children \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. saved    B. has saved  
C. was saved                                        D. were saved
15. All that can be done \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. have been done                                B. have done  
C. has been done                                 D. has done
16. He told us that the most important points \_\_\_\_\_ yet.  
A. didn't cover                                    B. hadn't cover  
C. weren't covered                                D. hadn't been covered
17. The robber broke into the store, trying to grab the money just as it \_\_\_\_\_ by Mr. Smith.  
A. had been counted                              B. was counted  
C. was being counted                              D. would count
18. He \_\_\_\_\_ flying in the opposite direction by a slight touch.  
A. sent    B. was sent    C. will send    D. would send
19. The book is not likely \_\_\_\_\_ this year.  
A. to publish                                        B. to be published                                    C. publishing                                        D. being publish
20. The farmer was walking across the field when he \_\_\_\_\_ by a passing bullet.  
A. shot    B. was shot    C. had been shot                                        D. would be shot

## • 模拟自测题 •

1. Most environment problems exist because adequate measures for preventing them \_\_\_\_\_ taken in the past.  
A. was not  
B. were not  
C. were not being  
D. being not
2. Guam \_\_\_\_\_ by Magellan in 1521.  
A. was discovered  
B. discovering  
C. discovered  
D. had discovered
3. In order to attend an important dinner party, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. colorful dressed  
B. was colorfully dressed  
C. were colorfully dressed  
D. were dressed herself colorfully
4. The peasants \_\_\_\_\_ that they were the rightful owners of the lands.  
A. firmly convinced  
B. had firmly convinced  
C. were firmly convinced  
D. had firmly been convinced
5. The telephone \_\_\_\_\_ for about five minutes before it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. has been ringing...answers  
B. had been ringing...was answered  
C. rang...answered  
D. had been rung...was answered
6. Today is Beryl's wedding day, she \_\_\_\_\_ Harry.  
A. has just been married to  
B. has just married with  
C. was just married to  
D. just married to
7. When the fire broke out, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the house became emptying  
B. the house had emptied  
C. the house had emptied  
D. the house was made empty
8. This \_\_\_\_\_ tremendous changes in many of our products.  
A. has been resulted in  
B. has resulted in  
C. results in  
D. has resulted from
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ a repayment of the damaged goods.  
A. entitle to  
B. entitle myself to  
C. am entitled to  
D. have entitled to
10. I don't feel inclined \_\_\_\_\_ this business.  
A. to get involved in  
B. to involve with  
C. to get involved with  
D. get involve in
11. If one \_\_\_\_\_ by pride, he will reject useful advice and friendly assistance.  
A. overcomes  
B. is overcome

- C. has been overcome                      D. overcome
12. The children \_\_\_\_\_ many times not to go near the stove.  
A. have told                                      B. told  
C. have been told                                D. were being told
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ around the university soon after we arrived there.  
A. showed                                        B. had shown  
C. was shown                                      D. were shown
14. Many new oilfields \_\_\_\_\_ up one after another in our country.  
A. will be opened                                B. has opened  
C. open    D. is being opened
15. When I reached the box office all the tickets \_\_\_\_\_ out.  
A. have sold                                        B. have been sold  
C. had been sold                                  D. were sold
16. Once these technical problems are successfully solved, the output \_\_\_\_\_ on a large scale.  
A. has been raised                                B. will be raised  
C. is raised                                         D. was raised
17. By the end of this year, further observations \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. will have made                                B. are made  
C. will have been made                         D. have been made
18. The machine can operate on its own without \_\_\_\_\_ by man.  
A. controlling                                    B. having been controlling  
C. having controlling                             D. being controlled
19. A scientist, together with some assistants \_\_\_\_\_ to help in this work.  
A. send                      B. sends                      C. was sent                      D. were sent
20. Since computers were invented they \_\_\_\_\_ to be indispensable for scientific research.  
A. have been thought                            B. were thought  
C. thought                                         D. are thought
21. Ultrasonic waves \_\_\_\_\_ to work in laboratories and factories.  
A. have now put                                  B. is now put  
C. are now being put                             D. have been put now
22. Basketball, \_\_\_\_\_ 1891 by Canadian James Naismith, was never intended to be anything more than an interesting style of hard soccer for the university students.  
A. when it was invented in                      B. which invented



- Representatives in 1930 and to the Senate in 1938.  
A. when elected                                      B. elected  
C. who was elected                                      D. was elected
32. Ground plans and contour maps of the earth \_\_\_\_\_ from aerial photographs.  
A. can be drawn      B. can draw      C. to draw      D. drawn
33. Traditionally \_\_\_\_\_ in New England on Thanksgiving Day.  
A. when served is sweet cider                      B. when sweet cider is served  
C. is served sweet cider                              D. sweet cider is served
34. The wallflower \_\_\_\_\_ because its weak stems often grow on walls and along stony cliffs for support.  
A. so called is    B. so is called  
C. is so called    D. called is so
35. While holding no official or elected position, \_\_\_\_\_ as a statesman of great wisdom and acumen.  
A. the respected Booker T. Washington  
B. Booker T. Washington being respected  
C. Booker T. Washington was respected by many  
D. many people respected Booker T. Washington
36. Benjamin O. David Jr. \_\_\_\_\_ an assistant secretary of the Department of Transportation in 1971.  
A. who was appointed                                      B. was the appointment  
C. was appointed    D. whose appointment was
37. Because the saxophone is an excellent solo instrument, \_\_\_\_\_ in some important orchestral works.  
A. it is featured    B. while featured  
C. if feature    D. featured it
38. Milk proteins \_\_\_\_\_ for their high nutritional content.  
A. valued    B. are valued  
C. are they valued    D. to be valued
39. The artist Scipio Moorhead \_\_\_\_\_ primarily in the poetry of Phyllis Wheatley.  
A. is remembered    B. being remembered  
C. that it is remembered                                      D. remembered
40. Experiments in the photography of moving objects \_\_\_\_\_ in both the United States and Europe well before 1900.  
A. have been conducting                                      B. were conducting

C. had been conducted

D. being conducted

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. D    2. A    3. B    4. D    5. C    6. C    7. D    8. D    9. A    10. B  
11. C    12. C    13. A    14. B    15. C    16. D    17. B    18. C    19. B    20. A

### 单项语法坡度练习

1. B    2. B    3. C    4. C    5. C    6. B    7. C    8. A    9. D    10. B  
11. D    12. D    13. A    14. C    15. C    16. D    17. C    18. B    19. B    20. B

### 模拟自测题

1. B    2. A    3. B    4. C    5. B    6. A    7. D    8. B    9. C    10. A  
11. B    12. C    13. D    14. A    15. C    16. B    17. C    18. D    19. C    20. A  
21. C    22. D    23. A    24. B    25. B    26. A    27. D    28. D    29. D    30. B  
31. D    32. A    33. D    34. C    35. C    36. C    37. A    38. B    39. A    40. C

## 动词虚拟语气(3)

语气(mood)是一种以动词形式表现出来的语法特征,表示说话人对所说事物的态度。英语中有三种语气:陈述语气(indicative mood),祈使语气(imperative mood),虚拟语气(subjunctive mood)。

虚拟语气是谓语动词的一种形式,用来表示非真实的假设,表达说话人事与愿违或与事实相反的主观假定;有时虚拟语气还可用来表示命令、建议或其他。

### I. 语法精要讲解

#### 1) 一般要点精讲

##### (1) 非真实条件句中虚拟语气的构成与表现形式

非真实条件就是违背事实情况的假设,包括违背现在事实的假设,违背过去事实的假设,以及将来不可能发生或者有可能发生但说话人主观上不希望发生的假设。最后这一种假设简称为违背将来事实的假设。在这三种情况下,条件从句和主句中的谓

语动词的表现形式见下表:

	条件从句	主句
违背现在	过去式	should / would + 动词原形
违背过去	had + 过去分词	should / would + have done
违背将来	1) should + 动词原形 2) were + 动词不定式	should / would + 动词原形

## (2) 非真实条件句中虚拟语气的用法

① 违背现在事实的假设。例如:

If I were you, I would reconsider their proposal.

我要是你, 我就要重新考虑他们的建议。

If there were no water and air, all the living things would die.

如果没有水和空气, 所有的生物都要死亡。

If the earth had no gravity, the moon would fly to the sun.

假如地球没有引力, 月球就要向太阳飞去。

② 违背过去事实的假设。例如:

If she hadn't taken your advice, she would have made a bad mistake.

她要不是听了你的劝告, 就要犯大错误了。

If he hadn't been ill, he might have come.

要不是生病, 他是会来的。

I could have done it better if I had been more careful.

我要是细心一点, 是可以做得更好的。

③ 可能违背将来事实的假设。例如:

If he should fail, we would encourage him to try again.

万一他失败, 我们就鼓励他再试一次。

If I were to do it, I would do it in a different way.

要是我来做这件事, 我会是另外一种做法。

If the rocket should fall in a few seconds, it would certainly explode.

如果火箭几秒钟内竟然向下坠落, 那就一定会爆炸。

## (3) 其他从句中的虚拟语气

在表示建议、命令、要求以及表示“重要性”和“紧迫性”等含义的主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句中, 谓语动词常用虚拟语气, 由“动词原形”或“should + 动词原形”构成。

① 主语从句中的虚拟语气。例如:



It is desired that we (should) get everything ready before Saturday.

要求一切在星期六前准备好。

It is necessary that he (should) be sent there at once.

有必要马上派他到那里去。

It was arranged that they leave the following week.

根据安排他们下星期动身。

It is suggested that the meeting (should) be held at some other time.

人们建议换一个时间开会。

It is recommended that he apply for the position in an international bank.

有人推荐他去申请国际银行的职位。

下列结构的主语从句中，谓语动词用虚拟语气：

It is necessary that ... 有必要……，……必须

It is imperative that ... 必须……，……是紧要的

It is important that ... 重要的是……，……是很重要的

It is essential that ... 必须……，……是必要的

It is advisable that ... 最好……，……是理想的

It is better that ... 最好……

It is ordered that ... 根据命令……，人们要求……

It is proposed that ... 人们建议……

It is desired that ... 最好…… 需要……

It is requested that ... 人们要求……

It is suggested that ... 有人建议……

It is recommended that ... 有人推荐……

It is demanded that ... 根据要求……

It is decided that ... 已经决定……

It is arranged that ... 业已安排……

② 宾语从句中的虚拟语气。例如：

He commanded that we attack the enemy at once.

他命令我们立刻向敌人进攻。

They demanded that the right to vote be given to every adult man.

他们要求给予每个成年人选举权。

He requested that the manager give him an interview.

他要求经理给他面试的机会。

They suggested that the shipment be made within ten days.

他们建议 10 天内装船。

We insisted that Mr. Brown chair the meeting.

我们坚持要布朗先生主持会议。

The law requests that each car be checked at least once a year.

法律要求每辆车每年至少要检查一次。

下列动词后面的宾语从句中，谓语动词用虚拟语气：

suggest(建议), insist(坚持), recommend(推荐), order(命令), propose(提议), require(要求), request(要求), command(命令), demand(要求)。

③ 表语从句中和同位语从句中的虚拟语气。例如：

The doctor's suggestion is that he avoid using his right hand.

大夫的建议是让他避免使用右手。

The instruction was that notes be taken on everything all the people in the hotel did.

指令要求记录饭店里所有人的全部活动。

His proposal was that the meeting be put off until next Friday.

他的建议是把会议延期到下个星期五。

He gave the order that the data of the experiment be rechecked.

他命令对那次实验的数据重新核对。

下列名词后面的表语从句和同位语从句中，谓语动词用虚拟语气：suggestion(建议), proposal(提议), order(命令), instruction(指令、指示), advice(劝告), motion(提议)。

#### (4) wish 后从句中的虚拟语气

动词 wish 后的宾语从句，表示未实现的主观愿望。这类宾语从句的谓语动词用虚拟语气。其形式及对应的用法见下表：

动词形式	用法
过去式	表示当时未实现的愿望
过去完成式	表示过去未实现的愿望
过去将来式	表示将来不大可能实现的愿望

注：谓语动词 be 的过去式为 were，适用于各个人称。单数第一、三人称也可以用 was。例如：

I wish I were as young as you.

我要像你一样年轻该多好。

Mary wishes that she had studied law instead of history when she was at college.

玛丽希望自己上大学时学的是法律而不是历史。

Many children wish they could go to Disneyland.

许多孩子希望去迪士尼乐园。

#### (5) would rather, would sooner 后的虚拟语气

would rather 和 would sooner 的意思都是“宁愿”，其后的 that 从句中用过去时的动词表示尚未发生的动作，用过去完成时的动词表示对已发生的动作的某种愿望。例如：

I would rather (sooner) the football match took place tomorrow.

我宁愿足球赛明天举行。

I would rather you had known nothing about it.

我宁愿你对此事一无所知。

I would rather you went on holiday.

我宁愿你去度假。

#### (6) If only 后的虚拟语气

If only 表示“但愿”、“要是……就好了”，它的用法和 I wish 基本相同。例如：

If only I had more time to think about it. (对在情况的假设)

但愿我有更多的时间考虑它。

If only he had taken my advice years ago. (对过去情况的假设)

要是他几年前听了我的劝告就好了。

#### (7) It is (high / about) time that ...

此句型表示该是干(某事)的时候了(动词过去式)。例如：

It's already September 5 now. Don't you think it's about time we had our registration?

现在已经9月5号了，难道你不认为我们该注册了吗？

It's high time that we did something to stop pollution.

到了我们采取行动制止污染的时候了。

It's high time that we took firm measure to protect our environment.

是我们坚决采取措施保护环境的时候了。

#### (8) lest, for fear that, in case 引出的从句中的虚拟语气

lest 和 for fear that 都表示“惟恐、免得”，in case 表示“以防万一”。例如：

He took his umbrella with him lest it should rain. (should + 原形)

他带上了雨伞，担心会下雨。

Take some money with you in case you should need it. 带上点钱，以防急需。

I left him a note with my address on for fear that he not know where to meet me.

我给他留了张有我地址的条，怕他不知道我们在何处碰面。(should 可略)

#### (9) 由 otherwise 或 or 引出的分句

该句用虚拟语气表示与事实相反的情况。例如：

I was writing a report, otherwise / or I wouldn't stay up.

我正在写一份报告，否则我不会熬夜。

I used a computer, otherwise / or it would have taken me much longer to finish the work. 我用了计算机，否则完成这项工作会用去我更多的时间。

I was attending a meeting, otherwise / or I would have come to help you.

我在开会，否则我会来帮你的。

## 2) 动词虚拟语气特别要点精讲

### (1) 关于非真实条件从句的倒装

当省略连接词“if”时，可以把助动词 had, should 和系动词 were 移到主语前面，形成倒装。例如：

Had I left a little earlier, I would have caught the train.

我要是早点动身就赶上火车了。

Should it rain tomorrow, we would cancel the gathering.

万一明天下雨，我们就取消聚会。

Were there no air, there would be no sound. 没有空气就没有声音。

Had he not been ill, he might have come. 要不是生病，他是会来的。

Had he not been taken good care of, he would not have recovered so quickly.

要不是得到很好的照料，他不会恢复得这样快。

### (2) 用 with 或 without 引导的短语代替 if 引导的从句

with 或 without 引导的短语有时表示与事实相反的情况，此时句子中的动词要用虚拟语气。例如：

We would never have got there without the guide.

假如没有向导，我们是决不可能到达哪儿的。

Without timely operation, Tom would have been dead.

要不是及时手术，汤姆早死了。

I would have succeeded with your help. 如果有你的帮助，我本会成功。

### (3) 在带有 but for 引出的短语的句子中

but for 表示“假如某事没有发生或不存在，就……”的意思时，此短语代替 if 引导的从句，句子中的动词一般要用虚拟语气。例如：

But for the storm we could have been in time. 如果没有暴风雨，我们就会准时的。

We would have been in real trouble but for your help.

如果没有你的帮助，我们就会陷入严重的困难之中。

### (4) 在 but that 的从句的句子中

but that 的意思是“假使不……”或“要不是……”，but that 从句中用陈述语气，主句中用虚拟语气。例如：

But that she saw it with her own eyes, she could not have believe it.

如果不是亲眼所见，她本不会相信的。

But that there were no traffic accident, we could have arrived earlier.

如果没有交通事故，我们就会到得早一些。

## II. 学法指导

### · 省略规律谈“四看” ·

一看动词, 如 suggest, request, order, demand, propose, desire, command, insist 等及物动词所引导的宾语从句, 其谓语部分的 should 可以省略。例如:

They requested that every one attend the meeting on time.

他们要求大家准时出席会议。

The boy insisted that he cross the street alone. 那个男孩坚持要独自过马路。

二看结构, 如由“It is (was) requested / ordered, suggested, desired, decided.../ that ...”引导的名词性主语从句, 其谓语部分的 should 可以省略。例如:

It is desired that the bridge be built in two years. 要求两年内建成这座桥。

It has been decided that the meeting be held tomorrow. 已经决定会议明天举行。

由“It is necessary / imperative, important, essential 等形容词 that...”引导的名词性主语从句中, 其谓语部分的 should 可以省略。例如:

It is necessary that every student have an English dictionary.

每个学生有一本英语字典是很有必要的。

It is very important that everyone work well. 大家把工作做好是很重要的。

三看名词, 凡主句中有名词 suggestion, proposal, order, instruction, advice, motion 等后面所引导的表语从句或同位语从句中, 其谓语部分的 should 可以省略。例如:

His suggestion is that we play basketball after school. 他建议放学后打篮球。

My proposal is that the interview be canceled. 我建议取消这次面试。

四看连词, 凡由 lest, in case, for fear that 等引导的目的状语从句中, 其谓语部分的 should 可以省略。例如:

She is now studying very hard for fear that she fail in the examination.

她现在学习很刻苦, 生怕考试不及格。

You must wake him early lest he be late for school.

你务必早点叫醒他, 以免他上学迟到。

## III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. We are all for your proposal that the discussion \_\_\_\_\_.

A. be put off

B. was put off

C. should put off

D. is to put off

答案: A

提示: 在表示命令、建议、计划等名词后的同位语与其同源形容词一样要求后面跟的从句用虚拟语气, 即 **should + 动词原形**, **should** 可以省略。本从句为被动语态, 所以选 A。

译文: 我们都赞成你的建议将讨论推迟。

2. I wish I could have slept longer this morning, but I had to get up and come to class.

- |                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| A. could have slept | B. slept      |
| C. might have slept | D. have slept |

答案: A

提示: 本句中 **this morning** 为过去时间, 表示了过去希望而没有发生的事情, 所以从句应用 **could have slept** 表示与过去相反的事实。

译文: 我希望今天早晨能多睡一会儿就好了, 可是我还得起来去上课。

3. He must have had an accident, or he \_\_\_\_\_ then.

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| A. would have been here | B. had to be here |
| C. should be here       | D. would be here  |

答案: A

提示: 连词 **or** 意为“否则”, 将前后两个句子连起来, 前一个句子表明一种较为肯定的推测, 后一句则表达一种本该发生而没有发生的事, 应该用虚拟语气表示与过去事实相反的情况。除了 A 项, 其他选项都不能表达这一含义。

译文: 他一定出事了, 否则他已经在这里了。

4. We didn't know his telephone number, otherwise we \_\_\_\_\_ him.

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. would have telephoned | B. must have telephoned |
| C. would telephone       | D. had telephoned       |

答案: A

提示: 本句的前半部分包含了一个过去时间, 相当于一个条件句, 后半部分的并列句须用虚拟语气表示与过去事实相反的事实。

译文: 我们不知道他的电话号码, 不然我们就打电话给他了。

5. The mad man was put in the soft-padded cell lest he \_\_\_\_\_ himself.

- |            |                 |
|------------|-----------------|
| A. injure  | B. had injure   |
| C. injured | D. would injure |

答案: A

提示: 连词 **lest** 要求后面跟的从句用虚拟语气, 从句谓语动词用 **should + 动词原形**, **should** 可以省略。

译文: 那个疯子被关进装有软垫的病房, 以免他伤着自己。

6. I was advised to arrange for insurance \_\_\_\_\_ I needed medical treatment.

A. nevertheless      B. although      C. in case      D. so that

答案: C

提示: in case(万一)是个固定短语, 引导目的状语从句, 从句通常用虚拟语气, 但在真实的条件下, 也可用陈述句。nevertheless(然而), although(虽然)填进空格内, 整个句子意思不通。so that(以至, 为了)也不符合本题题意。

译文: 有人建议我买保险, 在我万一需要治疗的时候用。

7. It was essential that the application forms \_\_\_\_\_ back before the deadline(截止日期).

A. must be sent      B. would be sent  
C. be sent      D. were sent

答案: C

提示: 在表示愿望、建议、命令等的句型中, 从句谓语通常用虚拟语气 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。常见的此类形容词有 important, essential, necessary, imperative 等。本从句为被动语态, 所以选 C 项。

译文: 申请表必须在截止日期之前寄出。

8. It is recommended that the project \_\_\_\_\_ until the preparations have been made.

A. is not started      B. will not be started  
C. not be started      D. is not to be started

答案: C

提示: recommend 要求其相关的名词性从句用虚拟语气, 形式是 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。

译文: 建议在所有准备工作做好之后再开始这一项目。

9. It is vital that enough money \_\_\_\_\_ to fund the project.

A. be collected      B. must be collected  
C. is collected      D. can be collected

答案: A

提示: vital 这个词要求其后的主语从句用虚拟语气, 即 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。此类的形容词还有: desirable, essential, necessary 等。

译文: 重要的是募集足够的钱, 为这个项目提供资金。

10. It is politely requested by the hotel management that radios \_\_\_\_\_ after 11 o'clock at night.

A. were not played      B. not to play  
C. not be played      D. did not play

答案: C

提示: request 后面跟的从句要用虚拟语气。即 should + 动词原形, should 可以省

略。

译文：旅馆管理部门恳请客人晚上 11 点以后不要打开收音机。

11. It's already 5 o'clock now. Don't you think it's about time \_\_\_\_\_ ?

- A. we are going home                      B. we go home  
C. we went home                            D. we can go home

答案：C

提示：在 It's (high, about) time that ...后所跟的从句中谓语动词用过去式。

译文：现在已经 5 点了，难道你不认为我们该回家了吗？

12. "You are very selfish. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ that you are not the most important person in the world," Edgar said to his boss angrily.

- A. realized              B. have realized      C. realize                      D. should realize

答案：A

提示：在 It's (high, about) time that ...后所跟的从句中谓语动词用过去式。

译文：“你太自私，你该认识到你不是世界上最重要的人。”爱德加愤怒地对他的上司说。

13. If only the committee \_\_\_\_\_ the regulations and put them into effect as soon as possible.

- A. approve              B. will prove              C. can approve              D. would approve

答案：D

提示：if only 表示一种愿望，意为“但愿”，句中的谓语要求用虚拟语气，所以本题只能选 D，表示对现实结果的一种假定，若表示对过去事情一种未实现的愿望，谓语动词则要用 would / could / might + have done 形式。

译文：要是委员会尽快批准这些规章制度并付诸实施就好了。

14. You don't have to be in such a hurry, I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ on business first.

- A. would go              B. will go                      C. went                      D. have gone

答案：C

提示：would rather 后跟宾语从句时要求从句用虚拟语气，谓语动词用过去式，表示与现在事实相反。

译文：你不必这样匆忙，我宁愿你先去出差。

15. As Commander-in-chief of the armed force, I have directed that all measures \_\_\_\_\_ for our defense.

- A. had been taken                      B. would be taken  
C. be taken                              D. to be taken

答案：C



提示: direct 后跟 that 引导的宾语从句时, 从句的谓语动词用虚拟语气, 即 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。类似的词还有: recommend, request, urge, insist 等。

译文: 作为武装部队总司令, 我已经命令采取一切措施做好防卫。

16. If the whole operation \_\_\_\_\_ beforehand, a great deal of time and money would have been lost.

- A. was not planned                      B. has not been planned  
C. had not been planned                D. were not planned

答案: C

提示: 本句主句谓语 would have been lost 是表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。由 if 引导的条件句也应该相应地使用过去完成式。

译文: 如果整个工作不事先做好安排, 大量的时间和金钱都会白白浪费了。

17. Jean doesn't want to work right away because she thinks that if she \_\_\_\_\_ a job she probably wouldn't be able to see her friends very often.

- A. has to get                                B. were to get  
C. had got                                    D. couldn't have got

答案: B

提示: 简目前没有工作, 她只是在设想如果有工作的话, 情况会是怎样, 所以条件句应该用虚拟语气。当表述与将来情况相反的假设时, 从句用 should 或 were to 形式。C 项是虚拟语气的过去式, 与本题时间不符, A 和 D 都不能用在虚拟条件句中。

译文: 简不想马上就有工作, 她认为要是找了工作, 就不能经常看望她的朋友了。

18. We'll visit Europe next year \_\_\_\_\_ we have enough money.

- A. lest                      B. until                      C. unless                      D. provided

答案: D

提示: 本题选 D, 因为其他选项都不符合本题题意。lest 意为“以免”, until 意为“直到”, unless 意为“除非”。provided 和 if 一样既可引导虚拟条件句, 也可引导真实条件句。

译文: 如果有足够的钱的话, 我们明年将去欧洲。

19. \_\_\_\_\_ for my illness I would have lent him a helping hand.

- A. Not being                                B. Had it not been  
C. Without being                            D. Not having been

答案: B

提示: 本句主句表示与过去事实相反的情况, 从句部分相应地要用表示过去情况的虚拟条件句。由于省略了 If, 条件句就倒装。

译文: 如果我不生病的话, 我会帮他一把的。

20. \_\_\_\_\_ right now, she would get there on Sunday.

- A. Would she leave  
B. If she leaves  
C. Were she to leave  
D. If she had left

答案: C

提示: 从主句谓语来看, 本句是对现在或将来情况的虚拟, 那么条件从句也相应地对现在或将来情况进行虚拟。在四个选项中 B 是真实条件句, D 是对过去的虚拟, 所以可以首先排除。A 中出现了 **would**, 但虚拟条件句在表示与现在或将来相反的情况时只能用 **should** 或 **were to** 形式, 所以 A 也错误。

译文: 如果她是现在动身的话, 她星期天就到了。

21. \_\_\_\_\_ before we depart the day after tomorrow, we should have a wonderful dinner party.  
A. Had they arrived  
B. Would they arrive  
C. Were they arriving  
D. Were they to arrive

答案: D

提示: 这是一个主从复合句, 主句的谓语是 **should have**, 表明这是个虚拟语气的句子, 而且是对现在或将来情况的虚拟。从句应该是对现在或将来表示虚拟的条件从句, 所给的四个选项都是倒装句, 但只有 **were they to arrive** 有此功能, 是正确答案。**were to** 还可换成 **should**。A 是对过去的虚拟, 不符合题意。其他两个选项都不能在条件句中表示虚拟, 不能选。

译文: 我们后天离开, 要是他们在这之前到达, 我们可以举行一次美妙的晚宴了。

22. Had he worked harder, he \_\_\_\_\_ the exams.  
A. must have got through  
B. would have got through  
C. would get through  
D. could get through

答案: B

提示: 从本句的条件状语从句来看, 这是一个对过去事实的虚拟, 表示与过去事实相反的假设, 所以主句应相应地用虚拟形式。

译文: 如果他当时学习努力一点的话, 他已经通过考试了。

23. If I hadn't stood under the ladder to catch you when you fell you \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
A. wouldn't be smiling  
B. couldn't have smiled  
C. won't smile  
D. didn't smile

答案: A

提示: 本句的条件句和主句动作发生的时间比较复杂。从句的动作发生在过去, 虚拟句用过去完成式来表示, 主句的动作发生在现在, 虚拟时应该用 **would** 加动词原形来表示。四个选项中只有 A 正确。

译文: 如果你摔下来的时候我没有站在梯子旁边抓住你, 你现在就不可能笑了。

24. He suggested \_\_\_\_\_ to tomorrow's exhibition together.

A. us to go

B. we shall go

C. we went

D. we go

答案: D

提示: suggest 这个词不能带复合宾语, 也不能用动词不定式作宾语, 但可以跟动名词作宾语。suggest 后跟 that 引导的宾语从句时, 从句的谓语动词用虚拟语气, 即 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。

译文: 他建议我们一起去参观明天的展览。

25. To be frank, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ in the case.

A. will not be involved

B. not involved

C. not to be involved

D. were not involved

答案: D

提示: would rather 后跟宾语从句时要求从句用虚拟语气, 谓语动词用过去式, 表示与现在事实相反。

译文: 坦率地说, 我宁愿你不要卷入这个案件。

#### IV. 考级阶梯性练习

##### • 单项语法基础练习 •

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ a happier life if he were living alone.

A. would have lived

B. lived

C. could live

D. can live

2. We often hear old people wishing they \_\_\_\_\_ young again.

A. are

B. were

C. had been

D. will be

3. I suggested that the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ at the manager's office.

A. hold

B. be held

C. is held

D. is to be held

4. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ to the movie with you last night.

A. went

B. could go

C. can have gone

D. could have gone

5. I didn't to the party, but I do wish I \_\_\_\_\_ there.

A. had been

B. were

C. would be

D. would have been

6. If the policemen had arrived a little earlier, they \_\_\_\_\_ the accident.

A. saw

B. could saw

C. had seen

D. would have seen

7. If I \_\_\_\_\_ in your place, I wouldn't trouble him.

A. were

B. had been

C. could be

D. was to be

8. Experiments demand that accurate measurements \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. be made            B. is made            C. were to make        D. should make
9. It is imperative that the students \_\_\_\_\_ writing their papers before July 1st.  
A. finish              B. must finish        C. are to finish        D. will finish
10. If you had spoken more clearly you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. understood                                B. would understand  
C. would have understood                D. would have been understood
11. He has been so busy, otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ you more help.  
A. will give                                    B. would give  
C. would have given                        D. will have given
12. Marry insisted that Tom \_\_\_\_\_ her the right back.  
A. gives                B. give                C. given                D. have given
13. My idea is that we \_\_\_\_\_ a few people to help the other groups.  
A. should send        B. sent                C. will send            D. should have sent
14. I recommended that the students \_\_\_\_\_ his composition as soon as possible.  
A. finishes writing                            B. should finish the writing  
C. finish writing                                D. finished writing
15. Tom couldn't have written to me, or I \_\_\_\_\_ received his letter.  
A. had                B. have                C. could have            D. would have
16. It is necessary that an efficient worker \_\_\_\_\_ his work on time.  
A. accomplishes                              B. can accomplish  
C. accomplish                                 D. has accomplish
17. The driver examined the engine carefully, less it \_\_\_\_\_ wrong on the way.  
A. went                B. would go            C. should go            D. should have gone
18. She speaks as if she \_\_\_\_\_ on the spot.  
A. was                B. were                C. had been            D. is
19. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ rich, I \_\_\_\_\_ an apartment.  
A. am...will buy                              B. were...I will buy  
C. am...would buy                             D. were...I would buy
20. Please remind her of it for fear that she \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. forgot              B. forget              C. would forget        D. had forgotten

• 单项语法梯度练习 •

1. It is ridiculous that he \_\_\_\_\_ unable to read and write after two years of learning.

- A. is                      B. might be                      C. be                      D. would be
2. If we had been more careful, we \_\_\_\_\_ much better results now.  
A. would be getting                      B. would have got  
C. got                      D. had got
3. \_\_\_\_\_ to me, you wouldn't have made so many mistakes.  
A. You listened                      B. If you listened  
C. If you would listen                      D. Had you listened
4. If she \_\_\_\_\_ the measles, she could have gone to the park.  
A. hadn't                      B. hadn't had                      C. had had                      D. haven't
5. If the highway \_\_\_\_\_ better lighted, night driving would be safe.  
A. were                      B. was                      C. is                      D. would be
6. Your examination results were quite satisfactory, but \_\_\_\_\_ if you had spent less time in playing football?  
A. wouldn't they have been better                      B. wouldn't they be better  
C. won't they be better                      D. won't they have been better
7. \_\_\_\_\_ for your help, we'd never have been able to overcome the difficulties.  
A. If we had not been                      B. Had it not  
C. If it were not                      D. Had it not been
8. Helen doesn't know how much I spent in repairing the house if she ever found out, I'm sure \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. she'd never forgive me                      B. she never forgives me  
C. she'll never forgive me                      D. she does never forgive me
9. Emerson \_\_\_\_\_ alive today if the doctor \_\_\_\_\_ sooner that night.  
A. will be...comes                      B. would be...had come  
C. would be...came                      D. would have been...had come
10. Without your help, we \_\_\_\_\_ so much.  
A. will not achieve                      B. didn't achieve  
C. don't achieve                      D. would not have achieved
11. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being.  
A. do                      B. didn't do                      C. don't                      D. didn't
12. We had hoped that he \_\_\_\_\_ longer.  
A. stays                      B. should stay                      C. stayed                      D. would stay
13. I didn't know this exhibit was closed, but I wouldn't have been able to come even if \_\_\_\_\_ about it.  
A. I know                      B. I'd known                      C. I have been knowing                      D. I've known

14. I'd just as soon \_\_\_\_\_ those important papers with you.  
A. that you won't take                      B. your not taking  
C. please don't you take                      D. you didn't take
15. The Bakers arrived last night. If they'd only let us know earlier, \_\_\_\_\_ at the station.  
A. we'd meet them                              B. we'll meet them  
C. we'd have met them                        D. we've met them
16. I would not put on airs, \_\_\_\_\_ I you.  
A. was                      B. am                      C. be                      D. were
17. His doctor suggested that he \_\_\_\_\_ a short leave of absence.  
A. will take              B. would take              C. take                      D. took
18. He told me how he had given me shelter and protection without which I \_\_\_\_\_ of hunger.  
A. would be died                              B. would have died  
C. would die                                      D. will die
19. Your advice that she \_\_\_\_\_ till next week is reasonable.  
A. will wait              B. is going to wait              C. waits                      D. wait
20. If only we \_\_\_\_\_ as we were told! This would never have happened.  
A. had done              B. would come              C. do                              D. did

• 模拟自测题 •

1. The patient's doctor urges that he \_\_\_\_\_ an operation on his back as soon as his general health improved.  
A. has                      B. would have                      C. have                      D. will have
2. His proposal was rejected that the talks \_\_\_\_\_ in Geneva.  
A. would be held                              B. were to be held  
C. should be held                              D. had been held
3. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ the books on the reading list before I attended the lecture.  
A. have been reading                        B. would have read  
C. have read                                      D. had read
4. His English teacher recommends that he \_\_\_\_\_ regular degree program.  
A. begin                      B. begins                      C. will begin                      D. is beginning
5. Isn't it about time you \_\_\_\_\_ to do some work?  
A. begin                      B. began                      C. have begun                      D. should begin

6. It is necessary that this machine tool \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
A. be oiled            B. oil            C. is to be oiled            D. oiled
7. It is absolutely essential that all the applicants \_\_\_\_\_ one by one.  
A. interviewed            B. to interview  
C. be interviewed            D. to be interviewed
8. "What did the surgeon tell Mary?" "He recommended \_\_\_\_\_ an operation."  
A. that she will have            B. that she have  
C. her have            D. she has
9. The house master was strict. He requested that we \_\_\_\_\_ television on week nights.  
A. not watch            B. must not to watch  
C. not be watching            D. have not watched
10. The foreign student advisor recommended that the new lot of Arabian students \_\_\_\_\_ more Japanese before enrolling at the university.  
A. must study            B. study  
C. could study            D. had studied
11. It is necessary that all the objectives gathered \_\_\_\_\_ into account before starting a new project.  
A. be taken            B. should take  
C. were taken            D. had been taken
12. He speaks French as if he \_\_\_\_\_ a Frenchman.  
A. is            B. were            C. be            D. is being
13. I wish they \_\_\_\_\_ that problem again when they come tomorrow.  
A. brought up            B. would bring up            C. had bought            D. bring up
14. "The president made a brilliant decision, didn't he?" "Yes, he did. I don't know what I would have done if I \_\_\_\_\_ to make that decision."  
A. were            B. had had            C. have had            D. had
15. Eugene resents his mother's insistence that he \_\_\_\_\_ to church.  
A. go            B. would go            C. went            D. ought to go
16. The politician urged that all citizens \_\_\_\_\_ to the polls on Election Day.  
A. goes            B. went            C. must go            D. go
17. If Tim had not been badly hurt in an accident, \_\_\_\_\_ in last month's marathon.  
A. he would participated            B. he would have participated  
C. he participated            D. he will have participated
18. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being.

- A. do                      B. don't have                      C. didn't have                      D. didn't do
19. The doctor insisted that his patient \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. that he not work too hard for three months  
B. take it easy for three months  
C. taking it easy inside of three months  
D. to take some vocation for three months
20. \_\_\_\_\_ John they would all have died.  
A. Except for                      B. Except                      C. But for                      D. For all
21. John's suit was old and it was high time he \_\_\_\_\_ a new one.  
A. would buy                      B. bought                      C. buy                      D. will buy
22. He was so careless that he made quite a few mistakes which might \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have avoided                      B. be avoided  
C. avoided                      D. have been avoided
23. He commanded that she \_\_\_\_\_ him everything that had happened since he had departed from Belgrade.  
A. must tell                      B. might tell                      C. shall tell                      D. tell
24. It is strange that you \_\_\_\_\_ believe him.  
A. would                      B. should                      C. will                      D. shall
25. \_\_\_\_\_ no loss of energy by friction, the motion would continue indefinitely once it started.  
A. There were                      B. Were there                      C. There was                      D. If there is
26. At the beginning he didn't want to speak English \_\_\_\_\_ he should make mistakes.  
A. for fear                      B. lest                      C. in case                      D. least
27. \_\_\_\_\_ but a quarter of an hour earlier, the damage wouldn't have been so extensive.  
A. If have fire bridge arrived  
B. Had the fire bridge arrived  
C. The fire bridge had arrived  
D. If the fire bridge would have been arrived
28. The situation there requires that you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. present                      B. be present                      C. are present                      D. have been present
29. It is vital that you \_\_\_\_\_ our competitors to know our plan.  
A. do not permit                      B. will not permit  
C. not permit                      D. have not permitted



30. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about the garden until the weather improves.  
A. didn't do      B. haven't done      C. are not doing      D. don't do
31. Victor obviously doesn't know what's happened, otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ such a stupid remark.  
A. hadn't made      B. wouldn't make  
C. wouldn't have make      D. wouldn't be making
32. Provided that you \_\_\_\_\_ with us the police would not prosecute you.  
A. cooperate      B. will cooperate      C. cooperated      D. have cooperated
33. I wish that we \_\_\_\_\_ with my brother when he flies to England next week.  
A. could go      B. had gone      C. will go      D. are going
34. But for the storm, I \_\_\_\_\_ home before dark.  
A. were      B. would be      C. had been      D. would have been
35. It is essential that the replacement of worn parts and allowance for wear \_\_\_\_\_ constantly in mind during the design of the machine.  
A. keep      B. be kept      C. must keep      D. must be kept
36. Were it not for television, we \_\_\_\_\_ things happen in other places at the moment they are happening.  
A. can not see      B. could not see      C. will not see      D. did not see
37. But for his intelligence, we \_\_\_\_\_ able to achieve it.  
A. would never have been      B. were never  
C. had never been      D. shall never
38. It is vital that you \_\_\_\_\_ there in person.  
A. be      B. will be      C. will      D. are
39. "What's your opinion?" "It is natural that an employee \_\_\_\_\_ his work on time."  
A. finishes      B. finished      C. will finish      D. finish
40. One of the requirement for a fire is that the material \_\_\_\_\_ to its burning temperature.  
A. is heated      B. will be heated      C. be heated      D. would be heated

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. C      2. B      3. B      4. D      5. A      6. D      7. A      8. A      9. A      10. D

11. C    12. B    13. D    14. C    15. D    16. C    17. C    18. B    19. D    20. B

单项语法坡度练习

1. C    2. B    3. D    4. B    5. A    6. A    7. D    8. A    9. B    10. D  
11. B    12. D    13. B    14. D    15. C    16. D    17. C    18. B    19. D    20. A

模拟自测题

1. C    2. C    3. D    4. A    5. B    6. A    7. C    8. B    9. A    10. B  
11. A    12. B    13. B    14. B    15. A    16. D    17. B    18. D    19. B    20. C  
21. B    22. D    23. D    24. B    25. B    26. B    27. B    28. B    29. C    30. A  
31. C    32. C    33. A    34. D    35. B    36. B    37. A    38. A    39. D    40. C



## 非限定动词

没有人称和数的变化，不能充当谓语的或单独充当谓语的动词形式被称作非限定动词亦称非谓语动词，该动词形式包括动词不定式(the infinitive)、动名词(the gerund)和分词(the participle)。

### I. 语法精要讲解

#### 1) 一般要点精讲

##### (1) 动词不定式的使用规则

###### ① 失去。

动词不定式在一个句子中失去动词能够作谓语成分的句法作用。例如：

His wish is to become a great scientist. (表语)

他的愿望就是成为一个伟大的科学家。

He loved to listen to music. (宾语) 他喜欢听音乐。

###### ② 相当。

A. 相当于一个名词。例如：

To love and to be loved is a greatest happiness of life. (主语)

爱与被爱是人生的一大快乐。

We have decided to experiment with a new method. (宾语)

我们决定试验一种新方法。

The task , to make a teaching plan , was accomplished in time. (同位语)

制定教学计划的任务准时完成了。

B. 相当于一个形容词。例如：

She is always the first one to come to office. (定语) 她是第一个来办公室上班的人。

My intention is to stay abroad three years. (表语) 我打算在国外住三年。

C. 相当于一个副词。例如：

I started early (so as / in order) to go to work. (目的) 我早出发，上班去。

He is too young to join the army. (结果) 他太小了不够参军的年龄。

He isn't old enough to become the member of the club. (结果)

他年龄不够, 不能成为俱乐部的会员。

They jumped with joy to hear the news. (原因) 听见这个消息, 他们高兴得跳起来。

I work hard only to fall at last. (结果) (事与愿违的结果)

我努力工作, 可最后还是失败了。

③ 保留。

A. 保留动词第一个特征, 能带宾语。例如:

He offered to go with us. 他主动提出和我们一起去。(带宾语)

B. 保留动词第二个特征, 能被状语修饰。例如:

I should like to finish the job as soon as possible.

我希望你尽早完成这项工作。(被状语修饰)

C. 保留动词第三个特征, 有“体”式和语态的变化。例如:

He seems to be studying hard. 他好像在刻苦学习。(进行式)

He is said to have invented the machine. 据说是他发明了这种机器。(完成式)

He is determined to solve the problem. 他决心要解决这个问题。(一般式)

## (2) 动名词的使用规则

① 失去。

动名词在一个句子中失去动词能够充当谓语成分的句法作用。例如:

He doesn't mind keeping silent. (宾语) 他不介意保持沉默。

② 相当。

A. 相当于一个名词。例如:

Swimming is a good exercise. (主语) 游泳是一种好的锻炼方式。

Do you find staying here interesting? (宾语) 你发现待在这里有趣吗?

His habit, reading newspapers at night, remains unchanged. (同位语)

他晚上读报的习惯还未改变。

B. 相当于一个形容词。例如:

I have no desire to take sleeping pills. (定语) 我不想服安眠药。

③ 保留。

A. 保留动词第一个特征, 能带宾语。例如:

He left without saying anything. (带宾语) 他不辞而别。

B. 保留动词第二个特征, 能被状语修饰。例如:

His hobby is collecting stamps in his spare time. (被状语修饰)

他的业余爱好是集邮。

C. 保留动词第三个特征, 有语态的变化。例如:

I regret getting the part-time job. (一般式) 我后悔找了这份兼职工作。

He doesn't mind having been seriously criticized. (完成被动式)

他不在乎受到严厉的批评。

### (3) 分词的使用规则

#### ① 失去。

分词没有助动词 be 的帮助, 就不能单独充当谓语。

如: Being shocked by the terrible murder, he didn't move his legs.

他被这可怕的谋杀所惊吓, 连步子都迈不开。(分词作状语)

#### ② 相当。

A. 相当于一个形容词 (作定语/表语)。例如:

The book mentions something interesting. 这本书提到某些有趣的事。

A lost opportunity never returns. 机会失去不会再来。

B. 相当于一个副词(作状语)。例如:

Seeing the professor, the students smiled and said good morning. (时间状语)

学生们见到教授都微笑着道早安。

Being ill, he stayed at home. (原因状语) 他因为生病而待在家里。

United, we stand; divided, we fall. (条件状语) 我们团结则兴, 分裂则亡。

Beaten by the opposite team, the players did not lose confidence. (让步状语)

虽然被对手击败, 但选手们并未失去信心。

A letter has just come, (thus / thereby) relieving her from worries. (结果状语)

信来了, 缓解了她的忧虑。

The teacher went into the classroom, followed by a group of students. (伴随状语)

老师走进教室, 后面跟着一群学生。

#### ③ 保留。

A. 保留动词第一个特征, 能带宾语。例如:

They stayed at home, giving the house a thorough cleaning. (带宾语)

他们留在家里进行大扫除。

B. 保留动词第二个特征, 能被状语修饰。例如:

He is firmly opposed to the suggestion. (被状语修饰)

他坚决反对这个建议。

C. 保留动词第三个特征, 有“体”式和语态的变化。例如:

Having graduated from the college, he worked in a computer company. (完成式)

大学毕业, 他就是一家计算机公司工作。

(Having been) seen from the spaceship, the earth is just like a blue ball. (被动式)

从宇宙飞船上向下看, 地球就像一个蓝色的球体。

## 2) 特别要点精讲

## (1) 动词不定式的 8 种结构

① 不定式的否定结构 (negative structure)。例如:

You must promise never to do that again. 你要答应决不再做那种事。

It would be wrong not to take some measures to prevent pollutions.

不采取措施来防止污染是错误的。

Why not go out for a walk? 为什么不出去走一走?

② 不定式的“疑问”结构 (conj.+ the infinitive or prep. + conj. + the infinitive)。例如:

The problem is whether to accept such an invitation. 问题是是否要接受这个邀请。

She is a very nice person with whom to work. 她是一个很好共事的人。

如果上句中的介词放到不定式后, 连接词 whom 就必须省略。例如:

She is a nice person to work with.

③ 不带 to 的不定式结构(bare - infinitive)。例如:

Since she is unwilling to , we had better leave her alone.

既然她不愿意, 我们最好别惹她。(习惯用法)

I will do anything but work in the chemistry laboratory .

除了化学实验室的工作, 我什么都愿意干。(因为谓语动词是 do 的缘故)

The doctor told him nothing but to stop smoking.

医生只让他戒烟, 其他没说什么。(因为主动词不是 do)

④ 不定式的省略结构(elliptical structure)。

A. 省略 to 保留非谓语动词。例如:

All I did was hit him on the head. 我只是打了他的头。

What I will do is tell her the truth of facts. 我所要做的就是告诉她真相。

作表语的动词不定式说明上文 do 的内容时可省略 to, 同一结构中出现两个作用相同的不定式, 省略第二个不定式中的小品词 to。

B. 省略动词但保留小品词 to。例如:

Are you and Jane leaving for Beijing ? I hope to. (I want to . I'd like to. )

你和珍妮动身去北京吗? 我希望如此。

⑤ 不定式的复合结构(compound structure)。

A. 介词(for / of)+逻辑主语 + 不定式

It is + 形容词+ for somebody(逻辑主语) to do something.

或 It is + 形容词 + of somebody(逻辑主语) to do something

在上一结构中一般使用两类形容词: 表示性格品德的形容词(如: good, kind, cruel, generous, honest, shy 等)和表示行为特征的形容词(如: brave, wise, wrong, right, careful

等)。例如:

I think it wrong of him not to accept our suggestions.

我认为他不接受我们的建议是不对的。

It is wise of him to do that. 他那样做很明智。

It is very difficult for a foreigner to learn Chinese. 外国人学中文很困难。

B. there to be 构成的复合结构。例如:

It's too early for there to be anybody up. 时间太早, 还不会有人起来。

It is possible for there to be a short circuit somewhere. 某个地方可能短路。

⑥ 分裂不定式结构(the split infinitive): 在 to 与非谓语动词之间插入了一个副词。

例如:

She prepared to silently accompany him. 她准备默默地陪着他。

⑦ 不定式的独立结构(independent structure): 不定式在句中不作任何成分, 也不修饰任何成分, 具有插入语的性质, 表示说话人的态度和看法。如: so to speak (可以这么说), to be sure (当然, 固然), to be frank with you (坦率对你说), to be fair(公正地说)。

例如:

To tell the truth, I don't quite like this idea. 老实说, 我不太喜欢这种想法。

To be frank with you, I do not care much for your project. 坦率地对你说, 我对你的计划不感兴趣。

⑧ 主动与被动结构: 在部分含不定式的结构中, 不定式采用主动还是被动的形式, 这与该非谓语动词的控制语(逻辑主语)有关, 它涉及两种情况:

A. 该句的主语也是非谓语动词的逻辑主语。例如:

I have a letter to type. (即 I type) 我有封信要打出来。

B. 该句非谓语动词的逻辑主语在句外。例如:

I have an article to be typed. (by someone else) 我有篇文章要打。

## (2) 动名词的两个结构

① 否定结构(negative structure): 由 not 加动名词构成, 有时可以用 no 加动名词。例如:

There is no denying the fact that he is incompetent.

有一个不可否认的事实是他的能力不行。

It's no use buying clothes but not wearing them. 买衣服不穿就没有作用。

② 复合结构(compound structure): 动名词的复合结构由物主代词或名词所有格加动名词构成, 物主代词或名词所有格与动名词之间有逻辑上的主谓关系。复合结构作主语时可使用代词宾格或名词通格。例如:

His going there won't help much. 他去那里于事无补。

John's coming here will get us out of trouble. 约翰的到来使我们摆脱了困境。

My getting home late will worry my family. 我回家晚了使家里人担心。

### (3) 分词的三个要点和两个结构

三个要点:

① 分词的位置对词义造成的影响。例如:

all people involved (牵连的) involved problem (复杂的)  
 the method used (被采用的) a used bike (用过的 / 旧的)  
 all parties concerned (有关的) a concerned look (关切的)

② 分词的主动与被动式造成时间和语态的差异。例如:

过去分词表达过去行为状态: boiled water 开过的水  
 现在分词表达现在行为状态: boiling water 沸腾的水  
 过去分词表达已完成: developed country 发达的国家  
 现在分词表达未完成: developing country 发展中的国家  
 现在分词表示主动: leading class 领导阶级  
 过去分词表示被动: led class 被领导的阶级

③ 动词过去分词的双词并存现象对语意造成的影响, 其中一个只能作定语用。例如:

A bounden duty is a duty one is bound to do.

分内之事就是一个人应当担当的职责。

A drunken man is one who has got drunk. 醉鬼指喝醉了酒的人。

A lighted candle is one that has been lit. 燃烧的蜡烛指点燃的蜡烛。

Wood that has been rotted is rotten wood. 烂木头就是腐烂的木头。

Molten steel is steel that has been melted. 钢水就是融化的钢。

Shrunk clothes are clothes that have been shrunk in the wash.

缩水布就是下过水的布。

两个结构:

① 否定结构(negative structure)。例如:

Not Having done the job well, he received serious penalty from his boss .

由于没有做好工作, 他受到老板的严惩。

② 独立的主格结构(nominative absolute constructions): 当分词有自己逻辑上的主语时就构成独立主格结构。例如:

Time permitting, we shall visit the Great Wall. (条件)

时间允许, 我们就去参观长城。

All things considered, it is a good plan .

考虑诸多因素, 这是个好计划。

His hand broken, he left school . (原因)



他因手骨折而休学。

The sun setting, I was on the way home. (时间)

太阳西下，我在回家的路上。

Her eyes fixed on the fire, she did some serious thinking. (方式)

她的眼睛盯着火看，在严肃的思考。

She came home, her daughter running forward to meet her. (伴随)

她回到家，她的女儿跑上前来迎接她。

#### (4) 非谓语动词的用法比较

A. 不定式与分词在相同位置上的用法比较。例如：

I saw him crossing the street. 我看见他正横过街道。(正在发生，正在继续动作的一部分)

I saw him cross the street. 我看见他从街道的一边走到另一边。(全过程，动作已结束)

I won't have you saying that. 我不允许你那样说。(听任)

I won't have you say that. 我不会迫使你那样说。

B. 不定式与动名词在相同位置上的用法比较，例如：

try to do (千方百计地做)                      try doing (试试做)

like to do (一次性)                              like doing (一贯性)

regret doing (后悔做)                        regret to do (遗憾要做)

need (want, require)

The room needs giving a thorough cleaning.

The room needs to be given a thorough cleaning.

这个房间需要彻底打扫。

I regret giving up the chance. 我后悔放弃了这次机会。

The film is worthwhile to see. (The film is worth seeing. The film is worthy to be seen.)  
这部影片值得看。

## II. 学法指导

### • 用归纳法来掌握不带小品词 to 的不定式 •

A. 在下列词语之后出现的不定式不带小品词 to:

一看：表示视觉类动词

see, watch, notice, observe, behold

二听：表示听觉类动词

hear, listen to

三感觉：表示感觉类动词

feel, smell, perceive

四使动：使役动词 + 非谓语动词

have, make, let

五搭配：部分动词的固定搭配

make believe 假装, make do 勉强对付/凑合

let fly at 掷, hear tell of 听人说, leave go off 松开/放松

六介宾：介词 + 非谓语动词宾语

do nothing / anything / everything but (except)

(注：当主动词不是 do 一词时，介词 but / except 后的不定式需带 to)

七连动：连词+非谓动词

do no more than (do ...), rather than (do ...), no sooner than (do ...)

八习惯：在习惯用法中

had better, would rather, cannot ...but ..., can't help but, may as well ...

B. 举例说明。

He didn't notice anybody enter the room. 他没有注意到有人进了房间。

He listened to me repeat what the former teacher had said.

他听见我重复前任老师说过的话。

Suddenly he felt the atmosphere tense. 他突然感觉到气氛紧张。

I would have him wait for me. 我让他等我。

He made believe not to mind the criticism. 他假装不在意挨批评。

I did nothing but say "sorry". 我只好说声抱歉。

He insisted on going back to his work rather than stay in hospital.

他坚持要回去上班，而不愿待在医院。

I couldn't help but wait for the next train to come. 我们只好等下一班车来。

### III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. Although punctual himself, the professor was quite used \_\_\_\_\_ late for his lecture.  
 A. to have students  
 B. for students' being  
 C. for students to be  
 D. to students' being

答案: D

提示: 名词所有格作介词宾语。

译文: 尽管教授本人很守时, 但对学生的听课迟到早就习以为常。

2. As early as 1647 Ohio made a decision that free, tax-supported schools must be established in every town \_\_\_\_\_ 50 households or more.

- A. having                      B. to have                      C. to have had                      D. having had

答案: A

提示: 分词作定语修饰 town。

译文: 早在 1647 年, 俄亥俄州就做出决定, 拥有 50 户或 50 户以上居民的城镇要建立免税的、由税收资金支持的学校。

3. People appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ with him because he has a good sense of humor.

- A. to work                      B. to have worked                      C. working                      D. having worked

答案: C

提示: 动名词作宾语。

译文: 人们喜欢与他共事, 因为他特有幽默感。

4. They are going to have the serviceman \_\_\_\_\_ an electric fan in the office tomorrow.

- A. install                      B. to install                      C. to be installed                      D. installed

答案: A

提示: 不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语。

译文: 他们打算让维修工明天在办公室安装一台电扇。

5. The newcomers found it impossible to \_\_\_\_\_ themselves to the climate sufficiently to make permanent homes in the country.

- A. suit                      B. adapt                      C. regulate                      D. coordinate

答案: B

提示: 不定式作宾语后置, it 作形式宾语。

译文: 新来的人发现完全适应不了这个国家的气候, 在此安家完全不可能。

6. Ann never dreams of \_\_\_\_\_ for her to be sent abroad very soon.

- A. there being a chance                      B. there to be a chance  
C. there be a chance                      D. being a chance

答案: A

提示: 动名词的 there being 结构作介词宾语。

译文: 安从来未曾幻想她不久就有机会被派遣出国。

7. All things \_\_\_\_\_, the planned trip will have to be called off.

- A. considered                      B. be considered                      C. considering                      D. having considered



译文：我宁愿拥有一间自己的房子，即便很小，也不愿与他人合住一间。

13. So many directors \_\_\_\_\_, the board meeting had to be put off.

- A. were absent    B. been absent    C. had been absent    D. being absent

答案：D

提示：分词和自己的主语 directors 构成独立主格结构，作原因状语。

译文：很多董事没有到场，董事会会议不得不取消。

14. Fifty years ago, wealthy people liked hunting wild animals for fun \_\_\_\_\_ sightseeing.

- A. than to go    B. rather than to go    C. more than going    D. other than going

答案：C

提示：rather than(而不是) 连接两个平行结构 hunting 和 going，而 rather than 连接的成分与前面的动名词不对等，其含义“除了”不合题意。

译文：50年前，富人为了娱乐喜爱打猎，而不是观光。

15. If the building project \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of this month is delayed, the construction company will be fined.

- A. to be completed    B. is completed  
C. being completed    D. completed

答案：A

提示：一般来说，不定式作后置定语可表示一尚未实施的行为，而过去分词则表达已实施的行为。

译文：如果预计在月底完成的建筑工程推迟，建筑公司会遭到罚款。

16. He wasn't appointed chairman of the committee, \_\_\_\_\_ not very popular with all its members.

- A. to be considered    B. considering  
C. being considered    D. having considered

答案：C

提示：分词的被动结构补充说明原因。

译文：他未被任命为委员会主席，有人认为他在委员会成员中不太受欢迎。

17. Contrast may make something appear more beautiful than it is when \_\_\_\_\_ alone.

- A. seen    B. is seen    C. to be seen    D. having been seen

答案：A

提示：分词作时间状语时可保留连接副词 when。

译文：对比可以使某样东西显得比单独看更美。

18. We left the meeting, there obviously \_\_\_\_\_ no point in staying.

- A. were                      B. being                      C. to be                      D. having

答案: B

提示: there be 结构的分词短语表示原因。

译文: 我们离开会场是因为继续留下没有任何意义。

19. Agriculture is the country's chief source of wealth, wheat \_\_\_\_\_ by far the biggest cereal crop(谷物农作物).

- A. is                      B. been                      C. be                      D. being

答案: D

提示: 补充说明主语。

译文: 农业是该国财富的主要来源, 小麦是最大的谷物农作物。

20. The opening ceremony is a great occasion. It is essential \_\_\_\_\_ for that.

- A. for us to be prepared                      B. that we are prepared  
C. of us to be prepared                      D. our being prepared

答案: A

提示: 不定式的复合结构作主语。

译文: 开幕典礼是一个很重大的场合, 我们必须为此做好准备。

21. AIDS is said \_\_\_\_\_ the number-one killer of both men and women over the past few years in that region.

- A. being                      B. to be                      C. to have been                      D. having been

答案: C

提示: 不定式的完成体作主语补足语。

译文: 据说在过去的几年, 艾滋病是这个地区成年男女的头号杀手。

22. Even as a girl, \_\_\_\_\_ to be her life, and theater audiences were to be her best teachers.

- A. performing by Melissa were  
B. it was known that Melissa's performances were  
C. knowing that Melissa's performances were  
D. Melissa knew that performing was

答案: D

提示: 因为该句缺主谓结构, D 项的主谓结构与题意吻合。

译文: Melissa 虽说是个孩子, 她却懂得舞台表演就是她的生活, 剧院观众将成为她最好的老师。

23. \_\_\_\_\_ is not a serious disadvantage in life.

- A. To be not tall      B. Not to be tall      C. Being not tall      D. Not being tall

答案: D

提示：动名词用来描述长时间的状况，而不定式则描述短时间的状况。

译文：长不高并不会给生活带来很大的不便。

24. \_\_\_\_\_ at in this way, the present economic situation doesn't seem so gloomy.

- A. Looking            B. Looked            C. Having looked    D. To look

答案：B

提示：过去分词作状语表示被动含义，其逻辑宾语应该是后面主动词的主语。

译文：这样看的话，当前的经济形势似乎并不那么暗淡。

25. The three men tried many times to sneak across the border into the neighboring country, \_\_\_\_\_ by the police each time.

- A. had been captured                            B. being always captured  
C. only to be captured                         D. unfortunately captured

答案：C

提示：only + to do 的不定式结构表示结果。

译文：这三个男人尝试过很多次，企图溜出国境，结果每次都被警察逮住。

#### IV. 考级阶梯性练习

##### • 单项语法基础练习 •

1. They were made \_\_\_\_\_ like a dog.

- A. working            B. to work            C. work            D. for working

2. Could you give me a hand \_\_\_\_\_ the car, please?

- A. to carry the shopping in                    B. for carrying the shopping in  
C. and carrying the shopping in             D. and to carry the shopping in

3. The nurse said \_\_\_\_\_ ten hours a day in a hospital isn't much fun.

- A. working            B. to work            C. she works            D. that she work

4. "Why did you phone the Service Centre?" " \_\_\_\_\_ them to look after my son while I am away."

- A. Ask            B. Asking            C. To ask            D. For asking

5. "What did you hear last night?" "I seemed \_\_\_\_\_ someone knock at the door."

- A. hear            B. to have heard    C. to hear            D. having heard

6. It isn't \_\_\_\_\_ wearing winter clothes yet.

- A. cold to start                                 B. cold for starting  
C. enough cold to start                        D. cold enough to start

7. "Smith hates to do his homework." "That's natural. No one \_\_\_\_\_ it."  
A. really ever enjoys to do                      B. enjoys to really ever do  
C. really is ever enjoying to do                D. ever really enjoys doing
8. "I want to buy a bicycle." "We have several models \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. for you to choose at                          B. for the choice of yours  
C. for you to choose from                        D. for your choice
9. "Was the rally successful?" "No, because the number of \_\_\_\_\_ was smaller than we had expected."  
A. people attending                                B. attendance of people  
C. people who attend                              D. attended people
10. The plane was \_\_\_\_\_ at six, but something went wrong.  
A. to take off            B. had taken off        C. to have taken off    D. having taken off
11. There is not much time \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. leaving                B. leave                    C. left                      D. to leave
12. He gives people the impression \_\_\_\_\_ all his life broad.  
A. of having spent    B. to have spent        C. of being spent        D. to spend
13. I have heard both teachers and students \_\_\_\_\_ well of him.  
A. to speak            B. spoken                C. to have spoken        D. speak
14. After the guests left, she spent half an hour \_\_\_\_\_ the sitting-room.  
A. ordering              B. arranging              C. tidying up              D. clearing away
15. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ the decision as long as it is not too late.  
A. you to delay making                          B. your delaying making  
C. your delaying to make                         D. you delay to make
16. Peter, who had been driving all day, suggested \_\_\_\_\_ at the next town.  
A. to stop                B. stopping                C. stop                      D. having stopped
17. I'll never forget \_\_\_\_\_ you for the first time.  
A. to meet                B. meeting  
C. to have met            D. having to be meeting
18. Operations which left patients \_\_\_\_\_ and in need of long periods of recovery time now leave them feeling relaxed and comfortable.  
A. exhausted            B. abandoned            C. injured                D. deserted
19. With the development in science and technology, man can make various flowers \_\_\_\_\_ before their time.  
A. bloomed              B. blooming                C. bloom                    D. bloomed
20. \_\_\_\_\_ energy under the earth must be released in one form or another, for





13. This crop has similar qualities to the previous one, \_\_\_\_\_ both wind-resistant and adapted to the same type of soil.  
A. being                      B. been                      C. to be                      D. having been
14. The project \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of 2000, will expand the city's telephone network to cover 1 000 000 users.  
A. accomplished                      B. being accomplished  
C. to be accomplished                      D. having been accomplished
15. \_\_\_\_\_ evidence that language-acquiring ability must be stimulated.  
A. It being                      B. It is                      C. There is                      D. There being
16. The sale usually takes place outside the house, with the audience \_\_\_\_\_ on benches, chairs or boxes.  
A. having seated                      B. seating                      C. seated                      D. having been seated
17. The bank is reported in the local newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ in broad daylight yesterday.  
A. being robbed                      B. having been robbed  
C. to have been robbed                      D. robbed
18. No one had told Smith about \_\_\_\_\_ a lecture the following day.  
A. there being                      B. there be                      C. there would be                      D. there was
19. The president promised to keep all the board members \_\_\_\_\_ of how the negotiations were going on.  
A. informed                      B. inform                      C. be informed                      D. informing
20. As a college student, Fred could resist \_\_\_\_\_ what to do and what not to do.  
A. being told                      B. telling                      C. to be told                      D. to tell

• 模拟自测题 •

1. He gives people the impression \_\_\_\_\_ all his life broad.  
A. of having spent                      B. to have spent                      C. of being spent                      D. to spend
2. The speech which he made \_\_\_\_\_ the project has bothered me greatly.  
A. being concerned                      B. concerned                      C. be concerned                      D. concerning
3. All flights \_\_\_\_\_ because of the snowstorm, many passengers could do nothing but take the train.  
A. had been canceled                      B. have been canceled  
C. were canceled                      D. having been canceled
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ to bed after midnight.  
A. used to going                      B. was used to go                      C. was used to going                      D. used to be going

5. Our son doesn't know what to \_\_\_\_\_ at the university; he can't make up his mind about his future.  
A. take in            B. take up            C. take over            D. take after
6. A thief who broke into a church was caught because traces of wax, found on his clothes, \_\_\_\_\_ from the sort of candles used only in churches.  
A. had come            B. coming            C. come            D. that came
7. I vaguely remember \_\_\_\_\_ something like that .  
A. his saying            B . him to say            C. him having said            D. that he had said
8. It is wise \_\_\_\_\_ the case that way.  
A. of him to settle            B. for him to settle            C. of his settling            D. that he settled
9. Corn originated in the New World and thus was not known in Europe until Columbus found it \_\_\_\_\_ in Cuba.  
A. being cultivated            B. been cultivated            C. having cultivated            D. cultivating
10. \_\_\_\_\_ in this way, the situation doesn't seem so disappointing.  
A. To look at            B. Looking at            C. Looked at            D. To be looked at
11. The early pioneers had to \_\_\_\_\_ many hardships to settle on the new land.  
A . go along with            B. go back on            C. go through            D. go into
12. It is no good \_\_\_\_\_ to come now. He is busy .  
A. asking him            B. to ask him            C. if you ask him            D. that you ask him
13. The manager would rather his daughter \_\_\_\_\_ in the same office.  
A. had not worked            B. not to work            C. does not work            D. did not work
14. While he was in Beijing, he spent all his time \_\_\_\_\_ some important buildings .  
A. visiting            B. traveling            C. watching            D. touring
15. That young man still denies \_\_\_\_\_ the fire behind the store.  
A. start            B. to start            C. having started            D. to have started
16. In Disneyland, every year, some 800 000 plants are replaced because Disney refused to \_\_\_\_\_ signs asking his "guests" not to step on them.  
A. put down            B. put out            C. put up            D. put off
17. The last man \_\_\_\_\_ the sinking ship was the captain.  
A. left            B. to be leaving            C. to leave            D. leaves
18. As a public relations officer, he is said \_\_\_\_\_ some very influential people.  
A. to have been knowing            B. to be knowing  
C. to have known            D. to know
19. At yesterday's party, Elizabeth's boyfriend amused us by \_\_\_\_\_ Charlie

- Chaplin.  
A. copying      B. following      C. imitating      D. modeling
20. All the tasks \_\_\_\_\_ ahead of time, they decided to go on holiday for a week.  
A. had been fulfilled      B. were fulfilled  
C. having been fulfilled      D. been fulfilled
21. Sometimes children have trouble \_\_\_\_\_ fact from fiction and may believe that such things actually exist.  
A. to separate      B. separating      C. for separating      D. of separating
22. I was so \_\_\_\_\_ in today's history lesson. I didn't understand a thing.  
A. amazed      B. neglected      C. confused      D. amused
23. Professor Johnson is said \_\_\_\_\_ some significant advance in his research in the past year.  
A. having made      B. making      C. to have made      D. to make
24. In fact, Peter would rather have left for San Francisco than \_\_\_\_\_ in New York.  
A. to stay      B. stayed      C. staying      D. having stayed
25. What a lovely party! It's worth \_\_\_\_\_ all my life.  
A. remembering      B. to remember      C. to be remembered      D. being remembered
26. I was about to \_\_\_\_\_ a match when I remembered Tom's warning.  
A. rub      B. hit      C. scrape      D. strike
27. The work was almost complete when we received orders to \_\_\_\_\_ no further with it.  
A. progress      B. proceed      C. march      D. promote
28. Any donation you can give will help us \_\_\_\_\_ the suffering and isolation of the homeless this New Year.  
A. lift      B. patch      C. comfort      D. ease
29. It is important to \_\_\_\_\_ between the rules of grammar and the conventions of written language.  
A. determine      B. identify      C. explore      D. distinguish
30. He asked us to \_\_\_\_\_ them in carrying through their plan.  
A. provide      B. arouse      C. assist      D. persist
31. All their attempts to \_\_\_\_\_ the child from the burning building were in vain.  
A. regain      B. recover      C. rescue      D. reserve
32. I was so \_\_\_\_\_ in today's history lesson. I didn't understand a thing.  
A. amazed      B. neglected      C. confused      D. amused
33. Mr. Smith says: "The media are very good at sensing a mood and then \_\_\_\_\_ it."

- A. overtaking    B. enlarging    C. widening    D. exaggerating
34. \_\_\_\_\_ that he wasn't happy with the arrangements, I tried to book a different hotel.
- A. Perceiving    B. Penetrating    C. Puzzling    D. Preserving
35. The board of the company has decided to \_\_\_\_\_ its operations to include all aspects of the clothing business.
- A. multiply    B. lengthen    C. expand    D. stretch
36. It is no good \_\_\_\_\_ to come now. He is busy.
- A. asking him    B. to ask him    C. if you ask him    D. that you ask him
37. Time \_\_\_\_\_, the celebration will be held as scheduled.
- A. permit    B. permitting    C. permitted    D. permits
38. It will take us twenty minutes to get to the railway station, \_\_\_\_\_ traffic delays.
- A. acknowledging    B. affording    C. allowing for    D. accounting for
39. \_\_\_\_\_ him tomorrow?
- A. Why not to call on    B. Why don't call on  
C. Why not calling on    D. Why not call on
40. In order to raise money, Aunt Nicola had to \_\_\_\_\_ with some of her most treasured possessions.
- A. divide    B. separate    C. part    D. abandon

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. B    2. A    3. A    4. C    5. B    6. D    7. D    8. C    9. A    10. C  
11. C    12. A    13. D    14. C    15. B    16. B    17. B    18. A    19. C    20. A

### 单项语法坡度练习

1. D    2. D    3. B    4. D    5. A    6. C    7. B    8. A    9. D    10. D  
11. C    12. D    13. D    14. C    15. C    16. A    17. C    18. A    19. A    20. A

### 模拟自测题

1. A    2. D    3. D    4. C    5. B    6. A    7. A    8. A    9. A    10. C  
11. C    12. A    13. D    14. A    15. C    16. C    17. A    18. D    19. C    20. C  
21. B    22. C    23. A    24. B    25. A    26. D    27. B    28. D    29. D    30. C  
31. C    32. C    33. D    34. A    35. C    36. A    37. B    38. C    39. D    40. C



## 形容词与副词

形容词是用来修饰名词和代词，是表示人或事物的性质，状态和特征的词。副词则用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或全句的词，并说明时间，地点，程度，方式等概念。

### I. 语法精要讲解

#### 1) 一般要点精讲

##### (1) 形容词

① 形容词作定语一般放在名词之前修饰名词。例如：

She is a good student, and she works hard. (定语) 她是一个好学生，她学习努力。

This bike is expensive. (表语) 这辆自行车很贵。

Have you got everything ready for the meeting? (宾语补语)

你为这次会议做好准备了吗？

She arrived home, hungry and tired. (状语) 她又饿又累地回到家。

② 如果有两个或两个以上的形容词修饰一个名词时，则由它们和被修饰的名词之间的密切程度而定，越密切的形容词越靠近名词。如果几个形容词的密切程度差不多则按音节少的形容词放在前面，音节多的形容词放在后面。

A. 单个形容词作定语，一般放在被修饰词的前面，但也有少量形容词放在被修饰词之后。例如：

We have tried *all the ways possible / every way possible*. 我们已经尝试了各种办法。

We began to discuss the issues *involved*. 我们开始讨论涉及的问题。

B. 凡是可以作表语的形容词都可以作后置定语(这里主要是指以 a 开头的形容词，如 *asleep, alive, alone* 等)

C. 修饰由 *any, no, every, some* 构成的复合代词，形容词要后置。在英语中，形容词修饰 *something, anything, nothing* 等不定代词时，形容词放在名词后面。例如：

I have something important to tell you. 我有重要的事要告诉你。

Is there anything interesting in the film? 电影里有什么有趣的内容吗?

There is nothing dangerous here. 这儿一点都不危险。

D. *matter* 和 *thing* 的复数形式表示笼统的意义, 不具体指某种东西时, 修饰它们的形容词也常要后置。例如:

He hates things theoretical. 他讨厌理论的东西。

Things dramatic happened. 戏剧性的事件发生了。

Those are matters personal. 那些是个人事情

E. 有的形容词既可前置, 也可后置, 但意义不一样。例如:

	前置	后置
proper	a <i>proper</i> arrangement 适当的安排	Japan <i>proper</i> 日本本土
left	the <i>left</i> hand 左手 the <i>left</i> bank of a river 一条河流的左岸	Tyson had little <i>left</i> . 留给泰森的所剩无几。
present	at the <i>present</i> time 在目前	all students <i>present</i> here 所有学生都在场

作后置定语的形容词常有: *concerned* 有关的; *involved* 有关的, 牵涉进去的。

F. 由两个或两个以上的词组成的形容词词组修饰名词时须放在名词之后。用 *and* 或 *or* 连接起来的两个形容词作定语时一般把它们放在被修饰的名词后面。起进一步解释的作用。例如:

This is the book easy to read. 这是一本容易读的书。

Everybody, man and woman, old and young, should attend the meeting.

每一个人,男女老少,都应该参加会议。

You can take any box away, big or small. 这些箱子, 不管大小, 你都可以拿走。

③ 形容词的比较级和最高级: 绝大多数形容词有三种形式: 原级, 比较级和最高级, 以表示形容词说明的性质在程度上的不同。形容词的原级形式就是词典中出现的形容词原形。例如: *poor*, *tall*, *great*, *glad*, *bad*; 形容词的比较级和最高级形式是在形容词的原级基础上变化的。分为规则变化和不规则变化。

规则变化:

A. 单音节形容词的比较级和最高级形式是在词尾加 *-er* 和 *-est* 构成。

*great* (原级)                      *greater*(比较级)                      *greatest*(最高级)

B. 以 *-e* 结尾的单音节形容词的比较级和最高级是在词尾加 *-r* 和 *-st* 构成。

*wide* (原级)                      *wider* (比较级)                      *widest* (最高级)

C. 以 *-y* 结尾, 但 *-y* 前是辅音字母的形容词的比较级和最高级是把 *-y* 去掉, 加上 *-ier* 和 *-est* 构成。例如: *happy* (原形) *happier* (比较级) *happiest* (最高级)

D. 以一个辅音字母结尾, 其前面的元音字母发短元音的形容词的比较级和最高级是双写该辅音字母, 然后再加 *-er* 和 *-est*。例如:

big (原级) bigger (比较级) biggest (最高级)

E. 大部分双音节和多音节形容词的比较级和最高级是在形容词前面加 more 和 most。例如:

beautiful (原级)

difficult (原级)

more beautiful (比较级)

more difficult (比较级)

most beautiful (最高级)

most difficult (最高级)

常用的不规则变化的形容词的比较级和最高级:

原级

比较级

最高级

good

better

best

many

more

most

much

more

most

bad

worse

worst

little

less

least

far

farther(further)

farthest(furthest)

形容词前如加 less 和 lest 则表示“较不”和“最不”，表示降级比较。

important 重要

less important 较不重要

lest important 最不重要

④ 形容词比较级的用法: 形容词的比较级用于个人或事物两方之间的比较, 其结构形式为: 主语+谓语(系动词)+ 形容词比较级+than+ 对比成分。例如:

Our teacher is taller than we are. 我们老师的个子比我们的高。

It is warmer today than it was yesterday. 今天的天气比昨天暖和。

⑤ 形容词最高级的用法: 形容词最高级用于两个以上的人或物之间比较, 常见的结构形式为: 主语+谓语(系动词)+the+形容词最高级+名词+表示范围的短语或从句。例如:

She is the best student in her class. 她是她班上最好的学生。

主语+谓语(系动词) + one of the+形容词最高级+名词+表示范围的短语或从句。

Shanghai is one of the biggest cities in China. 上海是中国最大的城市之一。

## (2) 副词

### ① 副词的分类。

A. 时间和频度副词: 时间副词表示动作发生的时间范围。常用于回答“**When...**?”一类的问题; 频度副词修饰动词, 表示动作发生的频率程度。可用于回答“**How often...**?”一类的问题。常见的词有: now, then, early, today, lately, next, last, already, generally, ever, yet, soon, too, immediately, finally, shortly, before, ago, yesterday, always, often, frequently, usually, sometimes / occasionally, seldom / scarcely, hardly, never 等。例如:

She came immediately. 她立刻就来了。

She is constantly changing her mind. 她老是改变主意。



I'll be back presently (shortly). 我一会儿就回来。

B. 地点副词: 表示动作或状态发生的场所或方位。常用于回答“Where...?”一类的问题。这类词有: here, there, everywhere, anywhere, in, out, inside, outside, above, below, down, back, forward, home, upstairs, across, along, round, around, near, off, past, up, away, on 等。例如:

She forward. 向前迈步。

He is studying abroad. 他在国外留学。

C. 方式副词: 修饰动词, 表示动作进行的方式。可用于回答“In what way ...?”, “How...?”一类的问题。这类词有: carefully, properly, anxiously, suddenly, normally, fast, well, calmly, politely, proudly, softly, warmly 等。例如:

You haven't done the job properly. You'll have to do it again.

这件工作你没有做好, 你得重做。

He gently refused to accept the gifts. 他委婉地拒绝接受那些礼物。

How beautifully she dances! 她的舞跳得真美!

D. 程度副词: 修饰形容词、副词, 表示程度。可回答“To what extent ...?”这一类问题。这类词有: much, little, very, rather, so, too, still, quite, perfectly, enough, extremely, entirely, almost, slightly 等。例如:

I'm awfully sorry for it. 我非常抱歉。

He loved his mother dearly. 他深爱他的母亲。

E. 逻辑连接副词: 修饰整个句子, 表示该句与上下文的逻辑关系, 也就是人们常说的, 在文章中起着“启、承、转、合”的作用。这类词有: however, therefore, thus, nevertheless, moreover, furthermore 等。例如:

Noise pollution is very serious in the city; however, the government has taken action.  
这个城市的噪声污染非常严重, 但是政府已经采取措施。

The rain was heavy, consequently the land was flooded.

雨下得很大, 因此土地被淹没了。

Nevertheless, he decided to act. 尽管如此, 他决定采取行动。

F. 评注性副词: 修饰整个句子, 表示说话人的态度。常见的逻辑连接副词有: apparently, clearly, frankly, generally, indeed, obviously, typically, maybe, yes 等。例如:

Frankly, the student had not tried his best to study English.

坦率地说, 这个学生没有尽其最大努力学英语。

Evidently he was sensitive on this topic. 显然他对这个话题很敏感。

G. 其他副词

a. 疑问副词: how, when, where, why 用来引起一个特殊疑问句。例如:

Where have you been? I have been looking for you. 你到哪儿去了? 我到处找你。

b. 关系副词: when, where, why 用来引起一个定语从句。例如:

Mr. Frank decided to leave Germany, where Jews faced increasing persecution.

在德国, 犹太人遭受越来越多的迫害。弗兰克先生决定离开那儿。

This is the hotel where we stayed last winter. 这就是我们去年冬天住的旅馆。

That is the reason why I came so late. 这就是我来得这么晚的原因。

c. 连接副词: how, when, where, why 用来引起一个名词性从句。例如:

I don't know when my mother will go to your city.

我不知道我母亲什么时候去你们的城市。(引导宾语从句)

I can't decide where to go for my holidays.

我不能决定去哪里度假。(引导不定式短语)

That's how I look at it. 这是我的看法。(引导表语从句)

② 副词的用法。

副词在句中可作状语、表语、定语。例如:

He works hard. (状语) 他工作努力。

Is she in? (表语) 她在家吗?

Food here is hard to get. (定语) 这儿很难弄到食物。

③ 副词的位置。

A. 多数副词都可以放在动词的后面, 如果动词带有宾语, 副词就放在宾语后面。例如:

I get up early in the morning everyday. 我每天早早起床。

He gave me a gift yesterday. 他昨天给了我一件礼物。

B. 副词修饰形容词、副词时, 放在被修饰词的后面。例如:

It's rather easy, I can do it. 这很容易, 我能做到。

He did it quite well. 他做得相当好。

It's rather difficult to tell who is right. 很难说谁是对的。

C. 频度副词可放在实义动词的前面, 情态动词和助动词的后面。例如:

He seldom comes to see us. 他很少来看我们。

We usually go shopping once a week. 我们通常一周买一次东西。

D. 疑问副词、连接副词、关系副词以及修饰整个句子的副词, 通常放在句子或从句的前面。例如:

When do you study everyday? 你每天什么时间学习?

First, let me ask you some questions. 先让我来问几个问题。

How much does this bike cost? 这辆车子多少钱?

E. 多个副词做修饰语, 排列顺序如下:

a. 地点、状态(方式)、时间。例如:

He drove downtown quickly this afternoon.

b. 单位较小者、单位较大者。例如:

He'll call on you at eight o'clock(单位较小) next Sunday(单位较大).

c. 副词、副词短语。例如:

They arrived safely(副词) at the station(副词短语)

时间副词和地点副词如在一个句子中, 地点副词放前, 时间副词放后。例如:

We went shopping in the supermarket(地点副词) at 9 o'clock yesterday(时间副词)。

昨天九点钟我们到超市买东西了。

F. 时间副词。例如:

Tom *never* went abroad. (在实义动词前)

Tom has *never* been abroad. (在第一个助动词后)

Tom is *never* at home these weeks. (在系动词后)

其他常见副词的位置的排序有时具有一定的灵活性, 例如:

Susan is coming tomorrow. (首位或末位)

Then Bill left home. (首位或末位)

The bus arrived late. (一般末位)

John still dislikes dancing. (中位, 常用于肯定句)

They have just begun. (中位, 常和完成体连用)

G. 地点副词和状态副词一般放在末位。例如:

Children are playing outside. 孩子们在外边玩。

John drove very carefully. 约翰开车很小心。

H. 程度副词:

too, quite 等程度副词, 总是放在它所修饰的形容词、副词之前。但 enough 要放在它所修饰的形容词、副词之后。

#### ④ 副词的比较级。

副词和形容词一样, 也有它的比较级和最高级形式。可以参考形容词的变换形式。通常以词尾 -ly 结尾的副词(early 除外)须用 more 和 most。

hard            harder        hardest

fast            faster        fastest        early            earlier        earliest

much           more        most

warmly        more warmly        most warmly

单音节副词的比较级是在副词后面加上 -er 构成的, 最高级是在副词后面加上 -est 构成的。

near            nearer        nearest

hard harder hardest

大多数双音节副词，所有三个音节以上的副词的比较级是在副词的前面加上 -more 构成的。最高级是在副词前面加上 most 构成的。

successfully more successfully most successfully

有些副词的比较级和最高级形式是不规则的。

well — better — best

little — less — least

much — more — most

badly — worse — worst

far-farther(further)-farthest(furthest)

副词的比较级和最高级用法同形容词的比较级用法基本一样。句中最高级形式的可以省略。例如：

He works harder than I.

他比我工作努力。

Lucy gets up earlier than Tom.

露西比汤姆起床早。

He runs fastest in our class.

他在我们班跑得最快。

He dives deeper than his teammates.

他比他的队员潜水深。

It's true that he speak English more fluently than any of us.

他英语讲的确实比我们任何人都好。

## 2) 形容词与副词特别要点精讲

① 掌握形容词与介词比较固定的搭配使用，及不同介词搭配所表达的含义。例如：

The boy is good at physics. 这个男孩擅长物理。

Richard is busy with / over his work. 理查德忙于工作。

She is familiar with English. 她通晓英语。(familiar with 作主语补语时，主语一般是人，with 的宾语一般是物。)

English is familiar to her. 英语是她所熟悉的。(familiar to 作主语补语时，主语一般是物，to 的宾语是人。)

He'll be happy to accept your kind invitation. 他很乐意接受你善意的邀请。(形容词 + 不定式短语)

后面跟固定介词的形容词常见的有：

about: anxious, careful

at: apt, glad, quick, ready

for: anxious, eager, impatient, liable, notorious, proper, responsible, sorry, sufficient, suitable, useful

from: different, free

in: eager, rich, slow, weak

of: afraid, aware, capable, careful, cautious, certain, characteristic, confident, conscious, doubtful, fearful, hopeful, ignorant, independent, mistrustful, proud, quick, slow, sure, void, worthy

on: dependent

over: busy

to: close, comparable, equal, familiar, indifferent, indispensable, liable, necessary, peculiar, responsible, satisfactory, similar, strange, subject, suitable

with: busy, familiar

## ② 词形和词义相近的形容词辨析。

在英语中某些词有两种或两种以上的形容词形式，它们词形相近，但词义不同，以下这些词是较容易混淆的。

**alone** 独自的，独一无二的 / **lonely** 孤独的

He alone knows the secret. 只有他一人知道秘密。

He doesn't feel lonely when he is left alone.

在只剩下他一个人的时候，他并不感到孤独。

**classic** 一流的 / **classical** 古典的

The car was a classic of automotive design.

这辆车是第一流自动化设计的产品。

Chinese classical poetry 中国古典诗歌

**clean** 干净的 / **cleanly** 有干净习惯的

That shirt is dirty, here is a clean one. 那件衬衣脏了，这里有件干净的。

A cat is a cleanly animal. 猫是有清洁习惯的动物。

**comparable** 可比较的，有类似之处的 / **comparative** 比较而言的，相当的

A comparable car would cost far more in Europe.

一辆像这么好的汽车在欧洲可要贵得多。

He lived in comparative comfort recently. 他最近过得比较舒适。

**comprehensible** 可理解的 / **comprehensive** 全面的，综合的

You often find a writer's books more comprehensible if you know about his life.

如果了解作者的生平，就会感到他的作品更容易理解。

a comprehensive knowledge 渊博的知识

**confident** 有信心的，自信的 / **confidential** 机密的

We are confident of success. 我们有信心能成功。

a confidential secretary. 机要秘书

**considerable** 重要的, 值得考虑的; 有重大意义的 / **considerate** 体谅的, 体贴的, 周到的

The economy was a considerable issue in the campaign.

在竞选运动中经济是一个重要问题。

He is considerate of/to/towards old people. 他对老人很体贴。

**contemptible** 可鄙的 / **contemptuous** 轻视的

It was contemptible of him to speak like that about a respectable teacher!

他这样议论一位受人尊敬的教师真是为人所不齿!

She's contemptuous of my humble home and poor surroundings.

她瞧不起我出身卑贱, 家境贫困。

**continual** 频繁的, 连续的, 断断续续的 / **continuous** 连续不断的

He hates these continual arguments. 他讨厌这种无休止的争论。

a continuous noise 连续不断的噪音

**credible** 可信的 / **credulous** 轻易相信的 / **creditable** 值得赞扬的; 值得信任的

It is hardly credible. 这是难以置信的。

He always cheats credulous people. 他总是欺骗容易上当的人。

The student made a creditable effort on the essay.

这个学生在这篇短论上所作的努力值得赞扬。

**dead** 死的 / **deadly** 致命的 / **deathly** 死一般的

a dead volcano 死火山

Fog is the sailor's deadly enemy. 雾是航海者最致命的敌人。

a deathly silence 死一般的寂静

**defective** 有缺点的 / **deficient** 缺乏的

defective speech 有缺陷的演讲

deficient in common sense 缺乏常识

**desirable** 合意的; 值得做的 / **desirous** 渴望的

It is most desirable that he should attend the conference.

他能参加此次会议, 是最好不过的了。

Both sides were desirous of finding a quick solution to the problem.

双方都渴望找到迅速解决问题的办法。

**disinterested** 客观的 / **uninterested** 冷淡的

His action was not altogether disinterested.

他的行动并不完全公正。

Settle your own argument. I'm quite uninterested!

你们的争端自己解决, 这事我完全不感兴趣!

**earthly** 人间的, 尘世的 / **earthy** 泥土似的

In this earthly life nothing is perfect.

在我们现世的生活中, 没有什么完美无缺的。

an earthy smell 泥土的芳香

**effective** 有效的 / **effectual** 奏效的 / **efficacious** 有效的; (药等)灵验的 / **efficient** 有效率的 / **proficient** 熟练的, 精通的 / **sufficient** 充足的

After the government had taken some effective measures, prices began to level off.

政府采取了一些有效措施后, 物价开始稳定了。

Quinine is an effectual preventive for malaria.

奎宁是有效的疟疾预防药。

Vaccination for smallpox is efficacious.

种牛痘防天花是有效的。

The new secretary is a quick, efficient worker, and the boss is quite satisfied with her.

新来的秘书是个敏捷的、效率高的工作人员, 老板对她很满意。

She is proficient at / in figure skating. 她精于花样滑冰。

He has sufficient income for a comfortable retirement.

他有足够的收入保证舒适的退休生活。

**economic** 经济(上)的 / **economical** 经济的; 节省的

an economic use of home heating oil 家用燃油的有效使用

Going by train is more economical than going by plane.

坐火车比坐飞机更节约。

**electric** 用电的, 带电的, 有电的 / **electrical** 与电有关的

This heavy freighter is driven by two electric motors.

这辆重型运输汽车是由两台电动机驱动的。

The cooker isn't working because of an electrical fault.

这个炊具不能用了, 因为出了电路方面的故障。

**elementary** 基本的 / **elemental** 自然的

an elementary problem in statistics 统计学的基本问题

the elemental violence of the storm 暴风雨的自然威力

**eligible** 合格的 / **illegible** 难以辨认的 / **illegal** 违法的

Are you eligible to join this club? 你有资格加入这俱乐部吗?

an illegal act 非法行为

It is illegal to steal things. 偷东西是违法的。

**everyday** 日常的, 平常的 / **every day** 每天(作状语)

everyday life 日常生活

I get up at six every day. 我每天六点起床。

**fatal** 致命的 / **fateful** 决定性的

a fatal accident 致命的事故

a fatal illness 致命的病症/ a fatal car accident 致命的车祸

The loss of all my money was fatal to my plan.

钱都亏损了,把我的计划也毁灭了。

a fateful battle 决定性的战斗

**healthy** 健康的 / **healthful** 有益健康的

If you exercise regularly and eat properly, you'll stay fit and healthy.

如果你经常锻炼并适当饮食,你会保持健康的。

healthful exercise 健身运动

**historic** 用于形容那些因与历史事件或人物有联系而有名或有趣的事物 / **historical** 是指不管重要与否而在过去存在的所有事物,也指与历史有关的事物。

the historic first voyage to outer space 具有历史意义的首次太空旅行 a historic house 故居 a historical character 历史人物,它们经常可换用,例如:

historic / historical times 历史时期

**honorary** 荣誉的,光荣的 / **honorable** 可敬的,荣誉的,光荣的

an honorary degree 荣誉学位

Will the Honorable member please answer the question?

请尊敬的议员先生回答这个问题好吗?

**imaginable** 可想像的,常放在名词后面,前加 all, only, every 或最高级形容词 / **imaginary** 想像中的,不真实的 / **imaginative** 有想像力的,运用想像力的 / **imaginable** 可想像的,可能的

He told a story about an imaginary land. 他讲了一个关于虚构的地方的故事。

a imaginative writer 富有想像力的作者

This is the only solution imaginable. 这是惟一想得出的解决办法。

**imminent** 紧急的,马上要发生的/ **eminent** 闻名的,卓越的,显赫的

The famous popular singer's arrival is imminent.

那位著名的流行歌曲歌手即将到来。

The students are expecting the arrival of an eminent scientist.

同学们正期待一位著名科学家的来访。

**im(un)practical** 不切合实际的 / **impracticable** 无法使用的

The boys should not be trained to be an impractical person who can't even boil an egg.  
孩子们不应该训练成一个不懂实际,甚至连煮个鸡蛋都不会的人。

Those new business building plans are impracticable.



那些新的商务大楼的设计图是行不通的。

**industrial** 工业的 / **industrious** 勤奋的, 刻苦的

the industrial revolution/products 工业革命

The Chinese are an industrious nation. 中华民族是个勤劳的民族。

**ingenious** 有独创性的 / **ingenuous** 直率的, 天真的

An ingenious idea suddenly came upon him when he was taking a walk with his wife.

他和他夫人散步时突然想到了一个绝妙的主意。

Only the most ingenuous person would believe such a weak excuse!

只有最天真的人才会相信这么一个站不住脚的借口!

**intelligent** 聪明的 / **intelligible** 可理解的, 易领悟的 / **intellectual** 知识的, 智力的  
the an intelligent decision 一个明智的决定

an intelligible set of directions 一套易于理解的说明

**intense** 强烈的, 剧烈的, 高度的 / **intensive** 精深的, 集中的

intense emotion 深情

intensive reading 精读

**manly** 男人气派的 / **male** 男的 / **masculine** 男性的

The boy walked with a manly stride. 那男孩走路迈着大人的步子。

a male hormone 雄性激素

“He” and “him” are masculine pronouns. “He”和“him”都是男性代词。

**momentary** 瞬时的, 短时的 / **momentous** 重大的

a momentary delay 暂时的耽搁

a momentous occasion 重要的场合

**negligent** 粗心大意的 / **negligible** 可忽视的

He is negligent in one's work. 他工作马虎。

In buying a suit, a difference of ten cents in prices is negligible.

买一套衣服价钱只差一角钱是无所谓的。

**official** 官方的; 正式的 / **officious** 多管闲事的

The mass media demanded that all the official documents concerning the sale of this land be made public.

大众媒体要求公布有关出售这块土地的全部正式文件。

officious attention 过分注意

**potent** 强有力的 / **potential** 潜在的, 可能的

potent arguments 有说服力的证据

Every seed is a potential plant. 每粒种子都可能长成植物。

**seasonable** 及时的 / **seasonal** 季节的

He gave his foolish nephew some seasonable advice.

他给他那些愚笨的侄子一些及时的劝告。

the seasonal migration of birds 鸟类的季节性迁徙

**sensible** 明智的, 实用的 / **sensitive** 敏感的, 易波动的 / **sensory** 知觉的

a sensible woman 豁达的妇女

sensitive paper 感光纸

sensitive stocks 行情起落的股票

sensory nerves 知觉神经

**social** 社会的 / **sociable** 善社交的

Correct ideas come from social practice.

正确的思想来自社会实践。

The Smiths are a sociable family. 史密斯一家人很好交际。

**successful** 成功的 / **successive** 连续的

a successful man 功成名就的人

The school team won five successive games. (=five games in succession, five games running 连续五场比赛) 校队连续获得五场比赛的胜利。

**transitory** 短时间的 (指事) / **transient** 瞬时的 (指人)

This false world is but transitory. 这个虚幻的世界只是昙花一现。

Life is transient. 人生如朝露。

③词形和词义相近的副词辨析。

A. altogether / all together

altogether 完全(= entire), 总的说来(= on the whole)。例如:

He was not altogether satisfied. 他不完全满意。

all together 一起, 总共。例如:

Let's sing the song all together. 咱们一起来唱这首歌吧。

B. anyhow / somehow / somewhat

anyhow 无论如何, 以任何方式, 相当于 anyway, at any rate。例如:

It may rain, but I shall go out anyhow. 天可能会下雨, 但是我们无论如何都要出门。

somehow 以某种方式 (in some way or other) 或“由于某种原因”。例如:

We must find money for the rent somehow. 我们必须设法搞到钱交房租。

somewhat 从某种意义上讲, 有几分, 相当于 in a way, rather。例如:

I'm somewhat tired of this work. 我有些厌倦这份工作了。

C. entirely / utterly

entirely 表示说话人的肯定态度; utterly 则表示说话人持否定态度。例如:

I entirely agree with you. 我完全同意你的意见。

She is utterly dissatisfied. 他一点都不满意。

#### D. later / latter

later 除了作为 late 的比较级形式以外，还可以单独作为副词使用，意思是“后来、以后、过后”。latter 是形容词，意思是“后者的，后一半的”；也常和 former 一起构成名词性替代词，如：the former... the latter...。例如：

Later (on), John and Tom came to join us, too. 后来，约翰和汤姆也参加到我们中间来了。

He spent the latter half of his life in China. 他的后半生是在中国度过的。

#### E. most / mostly / almost

most “最”，修饰形容词和副词的最高级。例如：

This is the most interesting novel I have ever read. 这是我读过的最有趣的一本小说。

此外，most 还有“最多，很，十分，最，最大的，其中大多数，极其”等意思。

most 相当于 very，非常。例如：

a most impressive piece of writing 一篇给人印象很深的文章

mostly 通常、在大多数情况下。例如：

She is mostly out on Sundays. 她星期日通常外出。

Which one do you like most? (in the greatest degree) 你最喜欢哪一个？

My friends are mostly engineers. (mainly; chiefly) 我的朋友大多是工程师。

almost 几乎。例如：

It was almost dark when they reached there.

他们到那儿的时候，天差不多黑了。

#### F. fairly / quite 和 rather

a. fairly / quite 常和“褒义词”连用，而 rather 却和“贬义词”连用。例如：

Tom is fairly / quite clever, but Peter is rather stupid. 汤姆很聪明，彼德却很傻。

His case is rather heavy, but mine is fairly / quite light.

他的箱子相当重，我的箱子却很轻。

This soup is fairly hot. 这汤热乎乎的。

This soup is rather hot. 这汤太烫了。

The room is fairly big. 这房间够大的。

The room is rather big. 这房间有点大了。

b. 不定冠词可以放在 rather 之前或之后，但只能放在 fairly 之前，quite 之后。例如：

This is rather a silly book (or a rather silly book). 这是一本相当愚蠢的书。

This is fairly interesting lecture. 这场讲座非常有趣。

I took quite a long walk this morning. 今天上午我走了很长一段路。

c. rather 用在比较级前，意思是 a little 或 slightly。例如：

The weather was rather worse than I had expected.

d. rather 有时也和某些表示“褒义”的词，如：good, well, pretty 等连用，意思是 very。例如：

John is rather clever. 约翰很聪明。

H. hardly 和 scarcely. 都含有否定意思。例如：

They hardly / scarcely need your help. 他们几乎不（很少）需要你们的帮助。

④ most 同形容词连用而不用 the，表示“极，很，非常，十分”。例如：

It's most dangerous to be here. 在这儿太危险。

I cannot do it, it's most difficult. 我干不了这件事，太难了。

⑤ The+形容词比较级……，the+形容词比较级……表示“越……就越……”。例如：

The more you study, the more you know. 你学的越多，就知道得越多。

The more I have, the more I want. 我越有就越想要有。

The more, the better. 越多越好。

⑥ 形容词比较级 + and + 形容词比较级，表示“越来越……”。例如：

It's getting hotter and hotter. 天气越来越热了。

It's pity he is getting poorer and poorer. 真可怜他越来越穷了。

The computer is cheaper and cheaper. 计算机越来越便宜。

The more and more people focus on the meeting next year.

越来越多的人关注明年的会议。

⑦ 主语+谓语(系动词)+as+形容词原形+as+从句表示两者对比。例如：

This box is as big as mine. 这个盒子和我的一样大。

I study English as hard as my brother. 我同我兄弟一样学习努力。

⑧ the + 形容词，表示某种人。例如：

He always helps the poor. 他经常帮助穷人。

I like to have a talk with the young. 我喜欢同年轻人谈话。

The rich sometimes complain their empty life. 富人有时抱怨他们空虚的生活。

The police led the old man across the street. 警察领老人横过马路。

⑨ 形容词、副词比较级的特殊用法。

A. not, never 之类的否定词与形容词或副词的比较级连用表示最高级含义。意为：“再没有比……更……的了”。例如：

It is not a better idea. 这是再好不过的一个办法了。

I have never heard such an interesting story. 我从来没有听过比这更有趣的故事了。

B. 少数以 or 结尾的形容词 + to 已含比较意义, 不再缀加词尾表示等级比较。此类词语有:

inferior 下等的, 次的, 差的                      superior 较高的, 上级的

senior 年长的, 地位较高的, 高级的          junior 年少的, 下级的等

This kind of car is superior in quality to that. 这种汽车的质量比那一种好得多。例如:

Li Ping is three years senior to Liu Gang. 李平比刘刚大三岁。

C. no+比较级 + than 表示对两个比较对象都进行否定(可由 neither...nor...结构来改写)。例如:

I'm no more foolish than you. 我们俩都不傻。(相当于 Neither I nor you is foolish.)

D. not more+比较级+than 表示在程度上前者不如后者。例如:

This book is not more interesting than that one. 这本书不如那本书有趣。(相当于 The book is less interesting than that one.)

E. 形容词比较级+than+形容词意为: 与其……倒不如……。例如:

Jack is much harder than clever. 与其说杰克聪明, 倒不如说他学习用功。

F. would rather...than, prefer...to..., prefer to do...rather than...这三个句型表示“宁愿……而不愿……; 喜欢……胜过……; 宁愿做……而不愿做……”。虽无比较级形式, 但表示比较级含义。例如:

She would rather die than give in. 她宁死不屈。

He preferred to go out rather than stay home. 他宁愿出去也不愿呆在家里。

G. the+比较级……, the+比较级……意为“越……, 越……”。例如:

The more difficult the questions are, the less likely he is able to answer them. 问题越难, 他回答出来的可能性就越小。

⑩ 形容词的比较级可以用来表示“倍数比较”, 且注意英汉之间的差异。以下三个英文句子表达方式不一样, 但意思是相同的。

I need a room four times as large as this one. 我需要的房间比这大三倍。

I need a room four times the size of this one.

I need a room three times larger than this one.

⑪ 形容词最高级前不用定冠词的情况。

A. 形容词最高级用在物主代词、指示代词或名词所有格后不用冠词。例如:

My best friend went to Beijing yesterday. 我最好的朋友昨天去北京了。

This largest city was Shanghai at that time. 这个最大的城市就是当时的上海。

Kate is Mary's best friend. 凯特是玛丽最好的朋友。

B. 形容词最高级前有 no 或 some, any 等不定代词修饰时不用冠词。

There is no smallest doubt. 毫无疑问。

Have you any best wine? 你们有最好的葡萄酒吗?

C. 形容词最高级作表语，而句中主语又作自身比较时不用冠词。例如：

Vegetables are best when they are fresh. 蔬菜新鲜时最好。

The Stars are brightest when there is no moon. 没有月光时，星星最亮。

Like most show people, I feel happiest when my life is maddest. 像大多数演员一样，我生活狂乐的时候感到最幸福。

但应当注意的是，当后面接有名词而不表示自身范围内的比较时，则不可省略定冠词。

试比较：

The lake is deepest at this point. 此湖这里最深。

The lake is the deepest in the world. 这湖是世界上最深的了。(the deepest = the deepest lake, 定冠词不可省略。)

D. 当形容词 most 表示非常、绝大多数、程度最深、数量最多以及泛指“某人或物是极其……的人或最好的物”时不用冠词。

I think our campus is most beautiful. 我认为我们的校园非常美丽。

Most people worked harder than me. 绝大多数人都比我工作努力。

Which is most, 4, 14 or 40? 哪个数字最大，4，14，还是40？

You are a most usual person. 你是一个极其平常的人。

E. 在以 as, though 引导的让步状语从句倒装时，注意局部倒装现象。例如：

Youngest in our class as she was, Kate did best in the exam. 虽然凯特在班里年龄最小，但她却考得最好。

Coldest though it was yesterday, none of us were late for school. 尽管昨天天气最冷，我们还是没有一个上学迟到。

F. 在口语体中，形容词最高级后省略名词时，其前也可省略冠词。例如：

Three pints of beer? 三品脱苦啤酒怎么样？

Best or ordinary? 最好的还是普通的？

G. 形容词最高级作表语后接动词不定式时不用冠词。例如：

It's best to do so. 这么做最好不过了。

It's very hot. It's best to wear cool clothes. 天气很热，最好穿凉快一点的衣服。

H. 当两个或两个以上形容词最高级同时修饰一个名词时，后面的形容词最高级前通常不用定冠词。例如：

John is the tallest but thinnest boy in our class. 约翰是我们班上个子最高但又最瘦的男孩。

Alice was the most careful and most beautiful girl in our class. 爱丽丝是我们班上最美丽、最细心的女孩。

I. 在 of + 形容词 + 名词的结构中，形容词最高级前面可不用定冠词。例如：

She had eyes of deepest blue. 她有一双深蓝色的眼睛。

It is of greatest consequence. 这极为重要。

J. 在祝贺语、广告、电报等文体中，形容词最高级前面也常常不用定冠词。例如：

I acknowledge, with sincerest thanks, your generous gift. 对您的慷慨馈赠，我致以最衷心的感谢。

I wrote, "Best wishes for Teachers' Day." 我写道：“向您们致以教师节最好的祝愿。”

K. 在有些短语中形容词最高级前可不用定冠词。例如：

She is at most twenty-one years old. 她最多 25 岁。

It will cost you at least three hundred yuan to fly to Wuhan. 坐飞机去武汉至少要花 300 元。

We must be more careful when things are at worst. 情况越是糟糕，我们就越是要保持谨慎。

⑫ what 有时也可以表示比较关系，说明两种事物的相同或相似性。what 的该种用法常用于书面语，用来加强修辞效果，含有比喻含义，相当于 as，意为“好比……；正如……；就像……一样”。what 的该类用法共有两种情况：

A. A is to B what C is to D. A 与 B 之比犹如 C 和 D。例如：

Twelve is to two what twenty-four is to four. 12 比 2 就等于 24 比 4。

B. What C is to D, A is to B. 例如：

What food is to the body, a book is to the mind. 书籍对于思想犹如食物对于身体。

What the gun is to a soldier, that the pen is to a writer. 作家的笔犹如战士的枪。

⑬ 有一些副词有两种形式，即与对应的形容词同形或“形容词 + ly”，其中有一部分，两者间的意义没有多大差别。例如：

cheap / cheaply 廉价地

clear / clearly 清楚地

close / closely 紧密地

deep / deeply 深深地

fair / fairly 公正地

firm / firmly 坚定地

loud / loudly 响亮地

quick / quickly 迅速地

right / rightly 正确地

slow / slowly 慢慢地

tight / tightly 牢固地

wide / widely 广阔地

wrong / wrongly 错误地

还有一类副词的两形式意义相同或相近，但用法有所不同。一般来说，形容词充当的副词在句子中的作用更接近于表语或补语，或出现在某些口语表达中；它们对应的 +ly 的形式在句子中更接近于方式状语或程度状语。试比较：

I can hear you loud and clear. 你的声音洪亮我听得清楚。

Please speak loudly and clearly. 请大点声，说得清楚些。

My watch often goes slow. 我的手表经常走得慢。

The hours pass slowly when you cannot sleep. 睡不着时, 你的时间就过得慢。

We must stand firm. 我们必须站稳立场。

They fixed the post firmly in the ground.

有时, 两种形式在用法上可以互换:

The moon shines bright / brightly. 月光明亮。

I bought the radio cheap / cheaply. 我廉价买了这台收音机。

例如: close / closely

I sat close behind him. 我紧靠在他身后坐着。

Theoretical study must be closely integrated with practice. 理论必须和实践紧密结合。

又如, quick / quickly

Run as quick as you can. 尽可能地快跑。

He quickly opened the door and ran out. 他很快开了门, 跑了出去。

right / rightly

It is not right to leave the party without saying goodbye. 不说声再见就离开舞会是不合适的。

He was rightly punished for his crime. 他为自己的罪行受到了应有的惩罚。

另一部分, 词形有别, 且两者意义差别较大。例如:

direct 直接地

directly 立刻

free 免费地

freely 自由地

hard 努力地

hardly 几乎不

high 高高地

highly 高度地

just 正好

justly 公正地

late 晚, 迟

lately 最近

most 最

mostly 大部分

near 近

nearly 几乎

sharp 急速地

sharply 严厉地

short 突然

shortly 马上

⑭ 有些形容词及其-ly 副词由于本身意义的原因, 不可通过加后缀“er”或前置词来构成比较级, 也不能被其他程度副词如 very 等修饰。如:

absolute 绝对的	correct 正确的	eternal 永恒的	final 最终的
first 第一的	last 最后的	only 仅有的	perfect 完美的
primary 首要的	sole 惟一的	total 总的	true 真实的
unanimous 一致的	unique 独特的	ultimate 最终的	wrong 错误的



归属于此类用法的形容词还有:

- A. 表示颜色的有: white, black  
 B. 表示形态的有: round, square, oval, circular, triangular(三角形), level  
 C. 表示性质和特征的有: atomic, economic, scientific, sonic, golden, silvery, woolen, earthen, silent, full, empty, sure, dead, deaf, blind, lame, rainy  
 D. 表示状态作表语的有: afraid, asleep, alive, ashamed, alone, aware, alike  
 E. 表示时间、空间和方位的有: daily, weekly, monthly, annual, present, front, back, forward, backward, east, west, south, north, left, right, final  
 F. 表示极限、主次、等级的有: maximum, minimum, utmost, main, major, chief, minor, superior, inferior, senior, junior, super, favorite  
 G. 含有绝对概念的有: absolute, entire, whole, total, perfect, excellent, thorough, complete

⑮ 同源副词的比较。

A. high, highly

The plane flew high above. 飞机在高空中飞行 (表示位置)。

This book is highly interesting. 表示程度, 常修饰来自动词的形容词, 如 pleased, skilled, enjoyable 等。

B. late /lately

late 可作形容词或副词, 意思是“晚”, “迟”; lately 为副词, 意思是“进来”、“最近”, 与 recently 同义, 指过去的一点时间或一段时间。例如:

He is often (often comes) late to class. 他上课经常迟到。

They moved into a new house lately (recently). 他们最近搬进了新居。

## II. 学法指导

### • 限定词排序规律 •

有几个形容词修饰一个名词时, 形容词的词序一般是: 限定词 + 主观形容词 + 客观形容词(“体”(大小)、“长”(长度)、“新”(新旧)、“高”(高度)、“色”(颜色) + 国籍 + 材料 + 名词或动词-ing 形式 + 名词中心词)。例如:

He has a very valuable big gold watch. 他有一块非常值钱的大金表。

That is a long black leather belt. 那是一条长的黑色皮带。

Mary wore a pretty red silk dress. 玛丽穿着一件漂亮的红丝绸礼服。

Two brilliant young Chinese engineers live there. 两位年轻聪明的中国工程师住在那儿。

### III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. A dark suit is \_\_\_\_\_ to a light one for evening wear.

- A. proper                      B. suitable                      C. favorable                      D. preferable

答案: D

提示: 固定搭配题。只有 preferable 可与 to 搭配, be preferable to “比起……来……更好, 更可取”。

译文: 深色西装比浅色西装更适合作晚装。

2. You will not be \_\_\_\_\_ about your food in time of great hunger.

- A. particular                      B. peculiar                      C. special                      D. specific

答案: A

提示: 固定搭配题。所填的词与 about 形成固定搭配。particular 在此处表示挑剔。

译文: 当你饿极了的时候就不会对食物挑三拣四了。

3. Nothing Helen says is ever \_\_\_\_\_ .She always thinks carefully before she speaks.

- A. simultaneous                      B. homogenous                      C. spontaneous                      D. rigorous

答案: C

提示: 词义辨析题。simultaneous 同时发生的; homogenous (生物) 同质的; spontaneous 自发的, 一时冲动的; rigorous 严格的, 严厉的; 精确的, 一丝不苟的。

译文: 海伦从来都不即兴讲话, 她总是仔细想过后才说。

4. He is always here. It's \_\_\_\_\_ you've never met him.

- A. unique                      B. strange                      C. rare                      D. peculiar

答案: B

提示: 近义词辨析题。A 表示独一无二的; B 表示奇怪的; C 表示发生的几率小; D 表示与常见的相反。

译文: 真奇怪, 他一直在这儿, 你却从来没见过他。

5. The European Union countries were once worried that they would not have \_\_\_\_\_ supplies of petroleum.

- A. proficient                      B. efficient                      C. potential                      D. sufficient

答案: D

提示: 形近词辨析题。D 表示达到需要的数量、质量等; A 指人对知识、技能的掌握程度; B 指成本与收益的比例; C 指潜在的能力。

译文: 欧共同体国家曾担心不能得到充足的供应。

6. In my opinion he's \_\_\_\_\_ the most imaginative of all the contemporary poets.

- A. in all                      B. at best                      C. for all                      D. by far

答案: D

提示: 考查形容词最高级的修饰语。By far 常用来修饰比较级或最高级, 表示“非常……得多”。A、B、C 都不能在最高级前作状语。

译文: 在我看来, 他是当代诗人中最有想像力的一个。

7. The \_\_\_\_\_ goal of the book is to help bridge the gap between research and teaching particularly between researchers and teachers.

- A. intensive                      B. concise                      C. joint                      D. overall

答案: D

提示: 逻辑关系题。A、B、C 通常不与 goal 连用。

译文: 这本书的总体目标是要在研究与教育之间架起一座桥梁, 特别是连接研究者与教育者之间的桥梁。

8. Their products are frequently overpriced and \_\_\_\_\_ in quality.

- A. influential                      B. inferior                      C. superior                      D. subordinate

答案: B

提示: 逻辑关系题。and 前后同义, overpriced 隐含质量低劣。A 不合句意; C 与原文相反; D 指级别低。

译文: 他们的产品往往是价高质次。

9. The neighborhood boys like to play basketball on that \_\_\_\_\_ lot.

- A. valid                      B. vain                      C. vacant                      D. vague

答案: C

提示: 形近词辨析题。vacant 为“空的, 空白的, 空闲的, 空缺的”。

译文: 邻居家的男孩在那块空地上打篮球。

10. During the process great care has to be taken to protect the \_\_\_\_\_ silk from damage.

- A. sensitive                      B. tender                      C. delicate                      D. sensible

答案: C

提示: 近义词辨析题。delicate 为“精巧的, 精致的”。

译文: 在整个过程中, 特别要注意保护精致的丝绸不受损伤。

11. He is quite sure that it's \_\_\_\_\_ impossible for him to fulfill the task within two days.

- A. absolutely                      B. exclusively                      C. fully                      D. roughly

答案: A

提示: 逻辑关系题。此处缺一个既可以表示可能性程度又反映主语肯定程度的副

词。B、C、D 不表示程度。

译文：他确信在两天内完成这个任务是绝对不可能的。

12. In the Chinese household, grandparents and other relatives play \_\_\_\_\_ roles in raising children.

- A. incapable      B. indispensable      C. insensible      D. infinite

答案：B

提示：形近词辨析题。indispensable 为“必不可少的”，修饰 roles。A、C、D 都不能与 roles 形成合理的搭配。

译文：在中国的家庭中，祖父母和其他亲属在养育孩子方面中起着不可或缺的作用。

13. \_\_\_\_\_ energy under the earth must be released in one form or another, for example, an earthquake.

- A. Accumulate      B. Gathered      C. Assembled      D. Collected

答案：A

提示：近义词辨析题。accumulate“积聚的，积累的”，强调渐进过程，符合句子意思。B 强调通过努力集中，不指缓慢的过程；C 指人员或部件的集中；D 指不易找到的零散对象的集中。

译文：积聚在地下的能量必须以这样或那样的方式释放出来，例如，地震。

14. My brother's plans are very \_\_\_\_\_ ; he wants to master English, French and Spanish before he is sixteen.

- A. arbitrary      B. aggressive      C. ambitious      D. abundant

答案：C

提示：逻辑关系题。题中冒号之后的部分说，弟弟想在 16 岁之前掌握英语、法语和西班牙语 3 门外语，修饰他计划的只能用 ambitious“有抱负的，有野心的”。

译文：我兄弟的计划雄心勃勃，他想要在 16 岁之前掌握英语、法语和西班牙语。

15. The statistical figures in that report are not \_\_\_\_\_. You should not refer to them.

- A. accurate      B. fixed      C. delicate      D. rigid

答案：A

提示：逻辑关系题。前后两句属因果关系，由结果(not refer to them)可推及原因：数据不精确。

译文：那份报告中的统计数字不准确，你不该用作参考。

16. The football game comes to you \_\_\_\_\_ from New York.

- A. lively      B. alive      C. live      D. living

答案：C

提示：形近词辨析题。live“直播的”，符合句意。alive“活着的，在世的”；lively“活泼的，鲜明的，生动的”；living“活的，逼真的，现存的”，与题意不符。

译文：你现在看到的是纽约足球比赛的实况转播。

17. The ship's generator broke down, and the pumps had to be operated \_\_\_\_\_ instead of mechanically.

- A. manually      B. artificially      C. automatically      D. synthetically

答案：A

提示：近义词辨异题。因为 instead of 后的内容与前面的内容互为反义词，所以空格处应填 mechanically 的反义词，即 manually“手工地”。B“人工地”；C“自动地”，强调不需人力参与；D表示通过分子构造工艺模仿自然物品而形成的。

译文：这艘船的发动机出了故障，抽水机不能机器操作，只能手动操作。

18. Purchasing the new production line will be a \_\_\_\_\_ deal for the company.

- A. forceful      B. tremendous      C. favorite      D. profitable

答案：D

提示：逻辑关系题。profitable“有利的，有利可图的”。

译文：购买这条新的生产线对公司而言是笔有利可图的交易。

19. Though he was born and brought up in America, he can speak \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese.

- A. fluid      B. smooth      C. fluent      D. flowing

答案：C

提示：近义词辨析题，fluent 流利的，流畅的。

译文：虽然他在美国出生并长大，可是他会说流利的汉语。

20. Petrol is refined from the \_\_\_\_\_ oil we take out of the ground.

- A. crude      B. fresh      C. rude      D. original

答案：A

提示：逻辑关系题。只有 crude oil 表示“原油”。

译文：汽油是由我们从地下抽出的原油提炼而成。

21. All the key words in the article are printed in \_\_\_\_\_ type so as to attract readers' attention.

- A. dark      B. dense      C. black      D. bold

答案：D

提示：在印刷品中黑体的固定说法为 bold type。bold“粗大的，醒目的”。

译文：这篇文章中所有的关键词语都印成了粗体字，以吸引读者的注意。

22. If this kind of fish becomes \_\_\_\_\_, the future generations may never taste it at all.

- A. minimum      B. short      C. seldom      D. scarce

答案: D

提示: scarce 的意思是稀有的。

译文: 如果这种鱼变得稀少, 未来的人们可能永远都吃不到它了。

23. Operations which left patients \_\_\_\_\_ and in need of long periods of recovery time now leave them feeling relaxed and comfortable.

A. exhausted      B. abandoned      C. injured      D. deserted

答案: A

提示: A 为“精疲力竭的”。

译文: 曾经让病人精疲力竭、需要很长一段时间才能恢复的手术, 现在却让他们感到放松和舒适。

24. The young people are not \_\_\_\_\_ to stand and look at works of art; they want art they can participate in.

A. conservative      B. content      C. confident      D. generous

答案: B

提示: 固定搭配题。content 为满意的, 满足的, be content to do sth. 是一个固定搭配, 表示“满足于做某事”。

译文: 年轻人不满足于旁观艺术品, 他们希望参与其中。

25. By law, when one makes a large purchase, he should have \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity to change his mind.

A. accurate      B. urgent      C. excessive      D. adequate

答案: D

提示: 逻辑关系题。adequate 充分的, 适当的; A 指与标准之间的差异; B 指事态的缓急; C 指超过正常或需要的, 与法律的公允性质相悖。

译文: 根据法律, 进行大宗购买时人们应有充分的机会改变主意。

26. It is said that the math teacher seems \_\_\_\_\_ towards bright students.

A. partial      B. beneficial      C. preferable      D. liable

答案: A

提示: 固定搭配题。Be partial towards sb. / sth. 表示偏袒某人或某一边。

译文: 据说, 那位数学老师似乎偏爱聪明的学生。

27. In order to show his boss what a careful worker he was, he took \_\_\_\_\_ trouble over the figures.

A. extensive      B. spare      C. extra      D. supreme

答案: C

提示: 近义词辨析题。take trouble over sth. 是一习语, 表示对某事尽心尽力; extra “额外的”, 指超过标准和常规。

译文：为了向老板显示他工作多么认真，他对那些数字特别细心。

#### IV. 考级阶梯性练习

##### • 单项语法基础练习 •

1. The picture was bought at a very low price, but it has turned out to be a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ painting.  
A. invaluable      B. invariable      C. worthless      D. valueless
2. \_\_\_\_\_, the children have done very well.  
A. All together      B. Together      C. All-together      D. Altogether
3. In the densely \_\_\_\_\_ part of the city, the problem of air pollution must be solved.  
A. populous      B. popular      C. populated      D. population
4. Eating an apple a day is considered \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. healthy      B. healthful      C. healthily      D. health
5. The mayor of the city is a \_\_\_\_\_ old man.  
A. respective      B. respectful      C. respecting      D. respectable
6. As a wrier, Walter was very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. imaginary      B. imaginable      C. imaginative      D. imagery
7. I will meet you at the theatre if that's \_\_\_\_\_ with you.  
A. all right      B. alright      C. quite right      D. right
8. I believe reserves of coal here are \_\_\_\_\_ to last for fifty years.  
A. efficient      B. sufficient      C. proficient      D. effective
9. We are \_\_\_\_\_ for the dance.  
A. already      B. allready      C. all ready      D. all-ready
10. She is so \_\_\_\_\_ that she cried for days when her pet rabbit died.  
A. sensitive      B. sensible      C. sensory      D. senseless
11. No sooner had he gone to bed than he fell \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sleepy      B. slept      C. asleep      D. sleeping
12. Tom arrived at 8 and Bill arrived ten minutes \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. later      B. latter      C. lately      D. last
13. I can't come tonight, that's \_\_\_\_\_ impossible.  
A. fairly      B. quite      C. very      D. rather

14. Morison seems \_\_\_\_\_ refreshed after his vacation.  
A. very                      B. very much                      C. too                      D. much very
15. The meat is not ready \_\_\_\_\_ and it \_\_\_\_\_ has to be cooked for another five minutes.  
A. still...yet                      B. yet...still                      C. yet...already                      D. already...yet
16. It won't do them any good, but it won't do them any harm \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. either                      B. too                      C. neither                      D. also
17. These apples look \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. nicely                      B. nice                      C. sweetly                      D. sweet
18. The twins are so much \_\_\_\_\_ that it is difficult to tell one from the other.  
A. similar                      B. same                      C. like                      D. alike
19. Most of what Bill said was \_\_\_\_\_; only one or two minor points he made were not closely connected with the matter being discussed.  
A. reliable                      B. relative                      C. related                      D. relating
20. Although he is still \_\_\_\_\_, his soul is dead.  
A. living                      B. alive                      C. lively                      D. live

• 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. He wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ to lift the case.  
A. too strong                      B. enough strong                      C. strong enough                      D. so strong
2. It was \_\_\_\_\_ that he had to ask for help.  
A. a so big work                      B. a so big job                      C. such a big work                      D. such a big job
3. I enjoyed the concert last night; they played \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful music.  
A. such                      B. so                      C. such a                      D. so a
4. She is \_\_\_\_\_ too young to travel alone.  
A. quite                      B. yet                      C. far                      D. exactly
5. "I wish Bill would drive us to the station."  
"He has \_\_\_\_\_ to take us all."  
A. too small a car                      B. a too small car                      C. very small a car                      D. such small a car
6. Small as it is, the job is worth \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. being done                      B. doing                      C. to do                      D. to be done
7. Mrs. London has \_\_\_\_\_ that she is unable to get a job.  
A. such a little education                      B. so little education  
C. so few education                      D. such little education



8. This is \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity to be lost.  
A. too good      B. too a good      C. too good an      D. a too good
9. Mr. Carson was \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour before dinner.  
A. very tired, so he laid down      B. too tired to lie down  
C. so tired he lay down      D. enough tired that he lay down
10. \_\_\_\_\_ that is!  
A. How beautiful view      B. What beautiful view  
C. How a beautiful      D. What a beautiful view
11. I don't feel \_\_\_\_\_ going out for a walk now.  
A. interested      B. happy      C. enjoyable      D. like
12. The sky was overcast; it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. looked like raining      B. looks like rain  
C. looked lie to rain      D. looked like rain
13. It's really kind \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. of you to say so      B. for you to say so  
C. of you saying so      D. for you saying so
14. Mary has bought a \_\_\_\_\_ carpet.  
A. Chinese beautiful green      B. green beautiful Chinese  
C. beautiful green Chinese      D. Chinese green beautiful
15. Helen is reading \_\_\_\_\_ story.  
A. a detective, old, exciting      B. an old, detective, exciting  
C. an exciting, old, detective      D. an old, exciting, detective
16. The examination wasn't difficult, but it was \_\_\_\_\_ long.  
A. too much      B. so much      C. much too      D. very much
17. Dinner is ready. Let's go \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. downstairs      B. the downstairs  
C. to downstairs      D. to the downstairs
18. We walked eight miles today. I never expected that we would walk \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. this far      B. that far      C. as far      D. such far
19. The tiny seed planted ten years \_\_\_\_\_ had flowered.  
A. before      B. ago      C. after      D. since
20. They want to know about the sea life \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. deep in ocean      B. deeply in the ocean  
C. deep in the ocean      D. in the ocean deeply

## • 模拟自测题 •

1. How beautiful she sings! I have never heard \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the better voice    B. a good voice    C. better the voice    D. a better voice
2. —Wait until we get a satisfactory reply, will you?  
—I couldn't agree \_\_\_\_\_. The idea is great to me.  
A. much                    B. more                    C. worse                    D. at all
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ you study, the \_\_\_\_\_ you'll be in it.  
A. hard...interested                    B. harder...interesting  
C. harder...more interested                    D. hardest...more interested
4. As far as I am concerned, education is about learning and the more you learn, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the more for life are you equipped    B. the more equipped for life you are  
C. the more life you are equipped for    D. you are equipped the more for life
5. The patient isn't out of danger. He is \_\_\_\_\_ than he was yesterday.  
A. no better                    B. worst                    C. not worse                    D. not more
6. Liu Fang studies much better than \_\_\_\_\_ student in his class.  
A. any                    B. any other                    C. the other                    D. other
7. This year the farmers have produced twice \_\_\_\_\_ grain \_\_\_\_\_ they did last year.  
A. As less...as                    B. fewer...than                    C. as much...as                    D. as many...as
8. In recent years travel companies have succeeded in selling us the idea that the farther we go, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. our holiday will be better                    B. better our holiday will be  
C. the better our holiday will be                    D. the better will our holiday be
9. —Are you satisfied with his answer?  
—Not at all. It couldn't have been \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. any better                    B. worse                    C. as good                    D. bad
10. Is the novel similar \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
A. for                    B. at                    C. as                    D. to
11. \_\_\_\_\_ important development of the Neolithic age was not in the manufacture of stone tools but in the production of food.  
A. The most                    B. Most                    C. Most of                    D. Of the most
12. —What was his performance like?  
—Oh, it couldn't have been \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. much wonderful                    B. more wonderful



- A. plain            B. common            C. dull            D. humble
28. If you keep getting wrong numbers, your phone could be \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. deceptive            B. ineffective            C. deficient            D. defective
29. "Do you like your new job?" "Yes, it's very \_\_\_\_\_ work."
- A. enjoyable            B. joyful            C. enjoyed            D. enjoying
30. It is \_\_\_\_\_ doubtful whether Sam will come to attend his best friend's funeral as he has taken the town's money and made off with it.
- A. unlikely            B. doubtful            C. improbable            D. unexpected
31. Present at the Christmas party were the two princesses and their \_\_\_\_\_ husbands and the Duke of Edinburgh.
- A. respectable            B. respectful            C. respective            D. respected
32. The narrow, sunless hall smelled \_\_\_\_\_ of stale cabbage.
- A. uninterestingly            B. unpleasantly            C. uninvitingly            D. unpleasingly
33. She is always fashionably dressed and looks \_\_\_\_\_ among the girls in plain clothes.
- A. outstanding            B. conspicuous            C. unusual            D. distinguishing
34. They've bought a holiday cottage near the sea, and in \_\_\_\_\_ course they plan to move there permanently.
- A. due            B. future            C. coming            D. intended
35. The King's daughter threatened to drink the \_\_\_\_\_ chemical if he refused her request.
- A. deathly            B. deadly            C. fatal            D. mortal
36. Those people who are \_\_\_\_\_ are most welcome to the politicians.
- A. credulous            B. credible            C. incredible            D. unbelievable
37. One of the responsibilities of the Coast Guard is to make sure that all ships \_\_\_\_\_ following traffic rules in busy harbors.
- A. cautiously            B. dutifully            C. faithfully            D. skillfully
38. For three quarters of its span on the earth, life evolved almost \_\_\_\_\_ as microorganisms.
- A. precisely            B. instantly            C. initially            D. exclusively
39. He spoke so \_\_\_\_\_ that even his opponents were won over by his arguments.
- A. bluntly            B. convincingly            C. emphatically            D. determinedly
40. I am not \_\_\_\_\_ with my roommate but I have to share the room with her, because I have nowhere else to live.
- A. concerned            B. compatible            C. considerate            D. compiled

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1.A    2.D    3.C    4.B    5.D    6.C    7.A    8.B    9.C    10.A  
11.C    12.A    13.B    14.B    15.B    16.A    17.B    18.D    19.C    20.B

### 单项语法坡度练习

1.C    2.D    3.A    4.C    5.A    6.B    7.B    8.C    9.C    10.D  
11.D    12.A    13.A    14.C    15.C    16.C    17.A    18.B    19.A    20.C

### 模拟自测题

1.D    2.B    3.C    4.C    5.A    6.B    7.C    8.C    9.B    10.D  
11.A    12.B    13.B    14.C    15.A    16.D    17.C    18.B    19.C    20.A  
21.D    22.D    23.B    24.A    25.C    26.B    27.A    28.D    29.A    30.B  
31.C    32.B    33.B    34.A    35.B    36.A    37.B    38.D    39.B    40.B



# 介 词

介词是一种虚词，用来表示句子中词与词之间的关系。介词不能单独使用，只有带宾语构成介词短语时，才能在句子里充当语法成分，如定语、状语、表语和补语等成分。介词还可以和动词、形容词、名词等连用，构成大量的习惯表达。

## I. 语法精要讲解

### 1) 一般要点精讲

#### (1) 介词的分类

英语中常用介词就其形式而言，可以分为四类：

① 简单介词：指由一个单词构成的介词。例如：

about, after, as, at, behind, by, before, despite, during, except, for, from, in, into, like, near, of, off, on, opposite, over, outside, since, through, till, to, under, until, up, with 等。

② 短语介词：指由两个或两个以上单词构成的介词。例如：

according to, ahead of, apart from, as for, but for, because of, except for, in addition to, in front of, in the name of, instead of, in spite of 等。

③ 合成介词。例如：

inside, into, onto, outside, throughout, upon, within, without 等。

④ 分词介词。例如：

concerning, including, regarding, respecting 等。

#### (2) 介词的位置

① 介词通常位于名词或代词前。例如：

She looked at him with contempt. 她轻蔑地看着他。

The little wrinkles about her eyes were more noticeable now. 她眼睛周围的细纹比往日更明显了。

② 在 whom/which/what/whose 等搭配使用时，介词可放在句尾，也可放置在上述

词语前。例如：

Who did you take care of? 你在照顾谁？

Which desk did you put the book on? 你把书放在哪个桌子上？

The man I talk with is my former teacher. 和我谈话的人是我以前的老师。

③ 在“不及物动词+介词”结构中，介词紧跟动词后。在这种结构中，宾语不可放在动词和介词之间，只能放在介词后面。例如：

As the president's car drew up, the crowd broke into loud applause. 总统的小车停下时，人群中爆发出热烈的掌声。

She was looking after her brother. 她正在照顾她的妈妈。

### (3) 介词的宾语

介词始终带有宾语，介词只能与其他词类结合才可以充当语法成分。介词的宾语不仅限于名词和代词，还可以是其他词类等。例如：

He entered the room without taking off his hat. 他没有脱帽就进了房屋。(动名词短语)

Your plan is far from perfect. 你的计划远不够完美。(形容词)

We knew nothing about the secret until recently. 我们直到最近才知道那个秘密。(副词)

I didn't tell him anything except that I needed the money. 我什么都没有告诉他，只是说我需要钱。(从句)

### (4) 介词的语法功能

介词与其他词类或成分结合后方能在句子中充当语法成分，构成介词短语。介词短语可以作定语(须后置)、状语、表语、宾语补足语、介词的宾语或主语。例如：

The skyscraper in the distance is a five-star hotel. 远处的那幢摩天大楼是一个五星级宾馆。(定语)

In all probability, he will decline your invitation. 他很有可能拒绝你的邀请。(状语)

Hundreds of famous paintings are on display in the art gallery. 几百幅著名的油画作品正在美术馆里展出。(表语)

A conceited man always thinks himself above others. 自负的人总认为自己高人一等。(宾语补足语)

A pretty girl appeared from behind the curtain. 一个漂亮的女孩从帘子后出现了。(介词宾语)

Between five or six(dollars) will be enough for him. 五六元足够他花了。(主语)

## 2) 特别要点精讲

### at 和 in

① at 表示“在……地点”时，通常指某一点的位置。in 表示“在……之内”。通常指一个(有长、宽、高的)立体的地方。例如：

I'll meet her at the corner of the street. 我将在街道的拐角处和她见面。

The accident happened in this street. 事故发生在这条街道上。

② 把某个机构看成一个单位或组织时用 at, 看成一个具体的地方时用 in。例如:

Her father works at Beijing University. 她的父亲在北京大学工作。

Her father lives in Beijing University. 她的父亲住在北京大学。

③ 在地点、地名前, at 把某处视为空间的一点, in 表示在某一范围之内。例如:

The Yellow Crane Tower in Wuhan is one of the most famous historical sites in China.  
武汉的黄鹤楼是中国最具盛名的历史名胜之一。

There are a lot of institutes of higher learning in Wuhan. 武汉有许多高等学府。

### **under 和 over**

under 和 over 是一对反义词, 表示垂直的概念, 指“在正下方, 在正上方”, 没有接触的含义。例如:

There is a carpet under the dining table. 在餐桌的正下方有一块地毯。

The lamp hung over the table. 那盏灯在桌子的正上方悬挂着。

### **above 和 below**

above 和 below 是一对反义词, above 意为“高于”, below 意为“低于”, 两者既不表示相互接触, 也不表示上下垂直, 仅表示“在……的上方”和“在……的下方”。  
例如:

The plane is flying above clouds. 那架飞机正穿越云层。(在云层上)

The sun has sunk below the horizon. 太阳落到了地平线下。(在地平线下)

below 还可以表示“数量少于, 气温低于, 比……差”等概念。例如:

The circulation of the newspaper decreased to below 500 copies. 报纸的发行量降到了 500 份以下。

His office is above mine on the third floor. 他的办公室在我楼上的三楼。(并非垂直的上面)

His office is just over mine. 他的办公室就在我楼上。(指垂直的上面)

### **beneath**

在表示“在……下”这层意义上, beneath 可以指垂直的上下关系和不垂直的上下关系, 也可以表示上下接触的意思。因此, 可以同 below, under 和 underneath 换用。  
例如:

They found the body buried beneath a pile of leaves. 他们发现尸体被埋在一堆树叶下。(上下接触)

Far beneath (below) the mountain was a sea of forest. 在山的下方是一片森林的海洋。(非垂直关系)

She was standing beneath (under) a cherry tree. 她正站在一棵樱桃树下。(垂直关系)



beneath 还用于抽象意义，表示“不值得，不屑，有失……身份”等意。例如：  
He considers such jobs beneath him. 他认为这份工作有失身份。

He considers such a gossip is beneath contempt. 他对这样的流言蜚语不屑一顾。

### by 和 beside

by 是指紧靠旁边，beside 只是在旁边，不一定接触。例如：

Don't park your car by the street or you'll be fined. 不要将车停放在路边，否则你将被罚。

I live beside the Central Garden. It's within walking distance. 我住在中央花园旁，离这里很近。

另外，beside 还有“与……无关，与……相比”的含义。例如：

The proposal he has put forward is beside the point. 他提出的建议与议题无关。

### near 和 next to

near 意为“在……附近，靠近” (not far from, close to)；next to 意为“紧挨着，紧靠着” (immediately beside, in the closest place to)。例如：

She stood near the door, looking into the distance. 她站在门边，看着远处。

The two stores were next to each other. 那两个零售店紧挨着。

另外，next to 还有“几乎”的意思，在表达喜欢或不喜欢时，还可用 next to，以此引出第二选择。例如：

David knew next to nothing about cooking. 大卫对烹饪一无所知。

Next to football, my favorite sport is skating. 除了足球，我最喜欢的运动是溜冰。

### before 和 in front of

before 用于“某人前” (但在现代英语中也可用于某物前)，其反义词是 behind, in front of 用于“建筑物前”。例如：

Before you is a list of the points we have to discuss. 放在你前面的是一份我们要讨论的要点。

A big pine tree stood in front of our house. 在我们的房前有一棵茂密的松树。

### behind 和 after

behind 表示方向、位置的先后，after 表示时间的先后，但表示“随在……后”时，两者均可用。例如：

The sun disappeared behind the clouds. 太阳消失在云层里。

He left immediately after (behind) the meeting. 会后，他立刻离开了。

behind 还可表示一些引申意义。例如：

Whatever he decided, his family was right behind him. 无论他做出什么决定，他的家人都会支持他。

What's behind that happy smile? 为什么会笑得那么开心？

**about 和 (a)round**

表示“在周围”时，about 指的是“靠近……的周围，大概的周围，含混的周围”，不表示“把……团团围住”；(a)round 指的是一种“完全的周围，封闭的周围”。例如：

The students walked about the lake. (泛指在周围)

The students walked (a)round the lake. (强调沿着湖边散步)

about 还有“在……各处，向……各处”等意；表示“在……附近”时，不如 near 明确。

She's somewhere about the office. 她在办公室附近。

**for, from, to 和 towards**

① for 表示目的地的方向，常与 sail, embark, set out, depart, start, leave, bound 等连用；from 表示动作的起点。例如：

He left from Beijing. 他离开了北京。

He left for Beijing. 他动身去北京。

② to 表示动作的目的地，作“到达”解，常与 run, fly, walk, drive, ride, come, go, march, move, proceed, return 等连用。towards “指朝着某个方向”，没有“到达”的意思。

He was heading towards the German border. 他正朝着德国边界走去。

He was heading to the German border. 他来到了德国边界。(走到，不可用 for)

**in 和 into**

in 意为“在内”，表示一种静止状态或一定范围内的动作；into 表示由外向内的动作。例如：

There is a toy in the box. 盒子里有一个玩具。(静止状态)

He put the money in the drawer. 他把钱放进抽屉。(一定范围的动作)

He jumped into the hole to see what had happened. 他跳进洞里，看看里面发生了什么。(由外向内)

但是，在同 go, put, throw, disappear 等连用表示由外向内的动作时，两者可通用。例如：

She turned and disappeared in(to) the night. 她转过身去，消失在黑夜里。

**along, across, through, beyond 和 past**

① along 意为“沿着”，指一条线平行；across 则指两条线交叉，一条线从另一条线上横过。例如：

He walked along the road. 他沿着这条路走。

He walked across the road. 他横穿过这条路。

② across 的含义与 on 有关，表示动作是在某一物体的表面进行的，指从一端到另一端或成十字交叉穿过，through 的含义与 in 有关，表示动作从物体中间穿过，这个动

作是在三度空间进行的，四面八方均有东西；past 则表示路过。例如：

She walked across the square. 她步行穿过广场。

She walked through the hall. 她步行穿过门厅。

She walked past the theater. 她步行路过影剧院。

③ across 可以表示“在……的对面或另一边”(on the other side from here); beyond 和 past 则指“在……对面或另一边再过去一些地方”(on the farther side)，比 across 更远的地方；across 可以用来指从“细而长”的物体(如河流)的一侧到另一侧，而 through 则不可。例如：

The magnificent building across the road is the International Trade Center. 马路对面的那幢宏伟的大楼是国际商务中心。

The road continues beyond the village up into the hills. 那条路经过村子后又往上延伸到群山中。

### **through, over 和 throughout**

表示空间上的“遍及”时，throughout 比 through 和 over 更加强调；也可以说 all through, all over。例如：

Discontent went through the country at that time. 那时，不满的呼声遍及全国。

The books lay scattered all over the floor. 书散落了一地。

The pictures can be transmitted by satellite throughout the world. 卫星可以将图片传往世界各地。

### **up 和 down**

① 表示动作时，up 指“由下而上”，down 指“由上而下”。例如：

They took a cruise up the Rhine. 乘船沿着莱茵河逆流而上。

They took a cruise down the Rhine. 乘船沿着莱茵河顺流而下。

② 表示静止的空间位置时，up 意为“在……高处，在……上面”；down 意为“在……下面”。例如：

The town is situated up the river. 这座小镇位于河的上游。

The town is situated down the river. 这座小镇位于河的下游。

③ 在表示静止的空间位置而不表示具体方向时，up 和 down 可换用，意为“在较远的那一端”。例如：

Alice lives just up the street. 爱丽丝住在远处的街上。

You can find a supermarket down the road. 在那条路边你可以找到一家超市。

在不明确具体方向而只表示“沿路、街、巷”行进时，两者可互换，相当于 along。例如：

He saw an old man walking slowly up (down) the road. 他看见一位老人正沿着路边缓缓前行。

**from 和 off**

① 在“离开与分离”这层意义上，表示陆上距离时，**from** 和 **off** 可互换；但表示海上距离时，只能用 **off**。例如：

The square is about ten miles from (off) my house. 那个广场离我的住所有 10 里远。

The ship sailed about 40 miles off the sea. 那条船驶至距离海边 40 里的地方。

② 相互粘连在一起的两物分开或被分开时，用 **off**；使放在一起(并非粘连)的两物分开时，用 **from**。例如：

The cover has come off the book. 书的封面已经脱落了。

He took the dictionary away from Jack. 他从杰克那里拿走了字典。

③ **far from** 作表语时意为“离……远，远不，远非，不仅……”；作状语时置于句首，意为“不仅……(而且)……”。这种用法上的 **from** 不可换为 **off**。例如：

Far from speeding up, the car came to a halt. 那辆轿车不仅没有加速，反而慢慢停了下来。

That was far from the truth. 那不是事实真相。

**between, among 和 amidst**

① **between** 一般用于两者，**among** 用三者或三者以上。例如：

J comes between I and K in the English alphabet. 在英文字母表上，J 位于 I 和 K 之间。

Paris is among the most beautiful cities all over the world. 巴黎是世界上最美丽的城市之一。

② 如果表示地理上的明显、准确的位置，用 **between** 指处于三者或三者以下之间，不用 **among**。例如：

Luxemburg lies between Belgium, Germany and France. 卢森堡与比利时、德国和法国毗邻。

③ 如果三者或三者以上用 **and** 连接，表示两方的并列，用 **between**，不用 **among**。例如：

The city lies between a river and hills. 那座城市位于山湖之间。

④ 表示地位基本相同的“共有、共同、分配”等概念时，用 **between** 可以指两者或两者以上；指两者以上时，意同 **among**。例如：

They four settled the question between(among) them. 他们四人就此问题达成一致。

**amidst** 后可接复数可数名词，也可以接表示质量、性质等的不可数名词，而 **between** 和 **among** 后只能接指人或物的可数名词，不能接抽象单、复数名词。例如：

He stood firm amidst temptations.(不可用 **between** 或 **among**) 在诱惑面前，他不动声色。

**across 和 over**

① 这两个词均可以用表示“处于或到达一条线、一条河或一条道路的另一侧”。例如：

Can you jump over/across the stream? 你能跳过那条溪流吗？

但在水中发生的动作不能用 over(水面上或水的上方则可以)。比较：

It took them one hour to swim over the river. (误)

It took them one hour to swim across the river. (正)

② 这两个词均可以用来表示“处于一座高的障碍物(如树篱、墙、山脉)的另一侧”，但表示到达另一侧的动作时，只能用 over。例如：

He saw a boy climbing very slowly over the fence. 他看见一个男孩慢慢地爬过了篱笆。(不可用 across)

③ 这两个词均可以表示某一范围(田野、舞厅)内的动作，但如果表示“从一定范围的一边到达另一边”，则只能用 across。例如：

It took the expedition team two weeks to walk across the desert. 探险队用了两周的时间步行穿过沙漠。

④ across 可用于三维空间(如房屋)内进行的动作，但 over 则不行。

The chairman walked across the hall, smiling to everyone he met. 主席走过门厅，向所有的人致意微笑。

**of, from, for, with, through 和 by**

① of 同 die 连用，表示疾病、中毒、悲伤、冻、饿等。例如：

His son having been killed in the war, the man died of a broken heart. 这个男人的儿子在战争中阵亡，他因此伤心而死。

of 还可表示生病的原因或情绪上的原因，如害怕、骄傲、羞愧等。例如：

He is aware of what happened there. 他意识到那里发生了什么。

She was deeply ashamed of her behavior at the party. 她对自己在聚会上的行为深感羞愧。

② from 表示因伤或事故死亡，也可表示不明的死因。例如：

The man died from some unknown cause. 那个人的死因不明。

③ for 表示某种内在的、心理上的原因，常同表示喜、怒、哀、乐等抽象名词连用；或为了某一目的、事业的原因；或奖赏、处罚的原因。例如：

She trembled for fear. 她害怕得发抖。

He died for the freedom of his people. 他为了人民的自由而死。

④ with 表示由外界影响到内的原因，既可指生理上的，也可指情感上的原因。例如：

She blushed with embarrassment. 她由于尴尬而脸红了。

Her fingers were numb with cold. 她的手指冻僵了。

⑤ **through** 表示偶然或消极的原因，常同 **neglect, negligence** 等连用。例如：

**She lost her job through carelessness.** 由于粗心，她失去了工作。

**The accident happened through his negligence.** 他的大意导致了事故的发生。

但 **through** 有时也可表示积极、正面的原因。例如：

**He attained his goal through persistence and hard work.** 他的执著和辛勤劳动使他实现了目标。

⑥ **by** 表示凶杀、暴力的原因，也可以表示手段或方法，有时相当于 **by reason of**，有时相当于 **by means of**。例如：

**The general died by his own hand.** 那个将军死于自己的手中。

**They tried to save themselves by clinging to the wreckage.** 他们紧抓住残骸以拯救自己的生命。

⑦ **in** 也可以表示原因，多指主观方面的原因；**in that** 相当于 **because** 或 **since**。例如：

**She started leaping up and down in excitement.** 她开始激动得跳上跳下。

**I wondered if I could have misunderstood the arrangement in my nervousness.** 我想是否由于我的紧张使我误解了约定。

⑧ **at** 常与表示“喜、怒、吃惊”等词连用，表示感情上的原因或理由。例如：

**I was astonished at the speed of the reaction.** 我对其反应速度之快感到惊讶。

**They were impatient at the delay.** 他们对拖延失去耐心。

⑨ **on** 所表示的原因指依据或条件。例如：

**On their advice I applied for the job.** 根据他们的建议，我申请了这份工作。

**He doesn't invest in the arms industry on principle.** 根据原则，他没有在军火业投资。

⑩ **due to** 表示某情况或事件的存在或发生是另一事件引致的结果。例如：

**Due to inflation, the rate of unemployment in Britain rose by 5% last year.** 由于通货膨胀，英国去年的失业率上升了5%。

**Stress due to poor working condition is one of cause of illness.** 由于恶劣的工作条件所造成的压力是患病的原因之一。

⑪ **owing to** 通常用作状语，但少数情况下也用作表语。例如：

**The game was cancelled owing to torrential rain.** 由于暴雨，比赛被取消了。

**I missed my flight owing to a traffic hold-up.** 由于交通堵塞，我延误了飞行。

⑫ **because of** 一般作状语，不作表语；但是如果主语是指某一个事实，而不是一个名词，**because** 也可用作表语。例如：

**She gave up the chance merely because of her lacking enough money.** 仅仅是因为没有足够的钱，她放弃了机会。

**He has dropped out of school because of his poor health.** 由于身体不佳，他退学了。

注意: on account of 的意义和用法与 because of 相同。例如:

Fish died in the lake on account of water pollution. 鱼死于湖水污染。

③ thanks to 只能作状语, 不能作表语, 意为“亏得, 幸亏, 由于”。例如:

Thanks to the new findings, we know more about the ancient empire. 由于新的发现, 我们对远古王国有了更多的了解。

注意: on account of, because of 和 owing to 后接 that 从句时, 必须在 that 前加 the fact。例如:

Her health is failing on account of the fact that she lacks exercises. 因为缺乏锻炼, 她的身体状况每况愈下。

### **in regard to, concerning**

① in regard to 和 with regard to 中的 to 为介词, 不是不定式符号, to 不可改用其他词。regarding 后不可加 to, as regards 中的 s 不可省。例如:

With (in) regard to studying English, you should read widely and speak more. 关于英语学习, 我们应该广泛阅读和多说多练。

I have little information as regards her fitness for the post. 至于她是否适合那个职位, 我不大清楚。

Call me if you have any problems regarding your word. 如果你对我的话有任何疑问的话, 请电话告知。

② concerning 和 respecting 这两个词都是正式用语, 意义上相当于 about, with regard to, concerning 还可同 as 连用, 构成 as concerning, as concerns 结构。例如:

He refused to answer questions concerning his private life. 涉及他的私人生活的问题, 他拒绝回答。

A lot of problems arose respecting atmosphere pollution. 空气污染引发了许多问题。

③ with respect to, in respect of 和 with (in) reference to 这几个词通常可以换用。with respect to 和 with (in) reference to 中的 to 为介词。例如:

With(in) reference to compiling the dictionary, Professor Smith has given us some advice. 史密斯教授就字典的编写给我们提出了一些建议。

The two groups were similar with respect to income and status. 这两组在收入和地位方面是相似的。

The refrigerator is good in respect of quality. 就质量而言, 这个冰箱是不错的。

### **by, with, on, in**

① by 相当于 by means of, 意为“凭、靠、以”; 注意下面三种搭配:

by+通讯工具(无冠词, 单数)→通讯方式; by+交通工具(无冠词, 单数)→交通方式; by+其他名词(无冠词, 单、复数)→方式、方法。例如:

She will let us know by telegram or by Telex. 她将通过电报或传真的方式告诉我们

真相。

Judged by the appearance, she can't be over forty. 依她的外表, 她不可能超过 40 岁。

② with 表示所使用的具体工具或手段, 也可以表示抽象的方式; by 表示方法、方式。在被动语态中, 用 by 表示行为者, 用 with 表示工具。例如:

Wood is often cut with a saw. 人们常常用锯子切割木头。

He brushed back his hair with his hand. 他用手将他的头发向后捋。(使用的具体手段)

We should face the situation with great courage. 我们应该以极大的勇气来正视现实。(抽象的方式)

These woolen socks were knitted by hand. 这些羊毛袜是手工编织的。(手工做, 表示方式)

Babies learn to speak by imitation. 小孩通过模仿学说话。(途径)

The mother took the girl by the hand. 小女孩的妈妈用手拉住了她。(侧重身体上的部位)

③ on 表示部分的行走方式。例如:

on a bike, on foot, on horseback, on tiptoe 都是固定说法, 介词不可变换。例如:

Did he come on foot or on horseback? 他是步行还是骑马?

Disease comes on horseback but goes off on foot. 疾病来得猛, 去得慢。

We crept around on tiptoes so as not to disturb him. 我们蹑手蹑脚地在周围走动, 以免惊动他。

④ in+(单数, 无冠词)pen ( pencil, ink )→书写的方式;

with + a pen ( pencil )→书写的工具;

with pen and ink→书写的工具(两个或两个以上名词并列使用时, 省略冠词, 不说 with a pen and ink)。

in 还可以表示行为的方式, 意为“以……, 按照……”; 也用于表示表达的方法, 指用某种语言、原料等。例如:

Please paint the wall in white, not in pink. 请用白色粉刷墙壁, 而不是粉红色。

The house was built in Spanish style. 这座房子是仿西班牙的风格建造的。

### at, by, than 和 to

① at 可以用来表示价值、价格、比率或速度。例如:

The car ran at full speed. 那辆车全速行驶。

The house was valued at 5 000 dollars. 这间房价值 5 000 元。

at 表示代价、单价或表示按……出售、买进; for 表示花钱买, 以价格卖, 指总价钱。例如:

She bought the fish at two dollars a pound. 她的鱼是以每磅两元的价格买的。(单价)



She bought the fish for twenty dollars. 她买了价值 20 元的鱼。(总价)

② by 用来表示度量单位或标准, 意为“以……计, 按……计算”。by 后表示计量单位的名词一般是单数, 名词前要加 the; 但表示计量单位的若是数词, 也可以用复数, 这时不可加 the; 另外, by retail(零售), by wholesale(批发), by auction(拍卖)等中的名词前不可加 the。例如:

Eggs are sold by the dozen. 鸡蛋论打卖。

These goods are sold by wholesale. 这些货批发出售。

by 还可表示数量、空间、时间等的相差。例如:

He missed the target by an inch. 他差一点击中了目标。

Today's temperature is below yesterday's by two degrees. 今天的气温比昨天低两度。

③ than 表示比较时用作连词, 但可以说 than whom。例如:

She is a person than whom I think no one is more polite. 她是我所认为的最有礼貌的人。

He is younger than I (am). 他比我年轻。

④ to 表示比较, 常用在 senior, junior, inferior, superior, prior, anterior, posterior 等后面。例如:

She came to see me prior to her departure. 她在离开之前来看我。

Modern music is often considered inferior to classical music. 人们常常认为现代音乐不如古典音乐。

to 还可以表示范围或一段时间的结尾或界限。例如:

I like all kinds of music from opera to the pop music. 我喜欢所有形式的音乐, 从戏剧到流行音乐。

在“A...to +B as (what)C...to D”结构中, to 表示比喻。例如:

Reading is to the mind what exercise is to the body. 读书可以睿智, 正如锻炼可以健身。

注意: to 所表示的“比, 对比”, 指的是比率, 如要强调“比较”, 须用 against 或 as against。另外, against 还有“相映, 衬托”的含义。例如:

He was elected chairman by a majority of 100 votes against 50. 他以 100 票对 50 票的优势当选为主席。

Flowers look more beautiful against green leaves. 绿叶映衬下的红花更加美丽。

⑤ above 表示比较时, 指(等级、职位)高于, (质量、价值)胜于、重于, (品质、行为)超越、胜过、不至于等。例如:

Temperatures have been above average. 气温一直比平均温度高。

He's above suspicion. 他无可置疑。

She is above most other players of her age. 她优于大多数同龄的参赛者。

**of 和 with**

① of 表示特性。

be of+抽象名词=相应的形容词, 例如:

The case is of great importance. (= very important)

这个案子非常重要。

② with 表示特性、属性时, 通常后接具体名词, 偶尔也可接抽象名词, 表示人或事物的具体形状、特征。例如:

a girl with red hair 一位红发女郎

He looked at her with a hurt expression. 他带着受伤害的眼神看着她。

以下是一些常见的介词与介词短语的比较。

**in time, on time 和 in good time**

in time 意为“及时, 不迟, 迟早, 过一段时间”。例如:

They were just in time for the last flight. 他们及时地赶上了最后一班航班。

If you keep trying, you will succeed in time. 如果你继续努力, 早晚都会成功的。

on time 意为“按时, 准时”(不迟不早)。例如:

The train pulled in on time. 火车准时到达。

in good time 意为“留有充分的时间, 提前”。例如:

He arrived at cinema in good time. 他提前到达了电影院。

**at the beginning of, at first 和 in the beginning**

at the beginning of 意为“在……的开头”。例如:

At the beginning of the meeting, they sang a song. 开会之前, 他们唱了一首歌。

at first 意为“最初”。例如:

At first they didn't know each other. 起初, 他们互不相识。

in the beginning 意为“当初”。例如:

In the beginning he knew little about the work. 当初, 他对这份工作了解甚少。

**at last, at the end of 和 in the end**

at last 意为“终于, 等了好久……才”, 语气很强, 常指为人们所盼望已久的事终于实现。例如:

At last they got over the difficulties. 他们终于战胜了困难。

at the end of 意为“在……的最后”。例如:

At the end of the dictionary, there is a list of new words. 在字典的最后, 有一个新词的列表。

in the end 意为“最后”, 指经过若干曲折、变化才达到某种结局, 可同 finally 换用。但 finally 还可用来引出一个系列的最后一项内容, 而 in the end 则不可。例如:

In the end he found the lost wallet. 最后, 他找到了他的钱包。

**besides, except(that), except for, but (for, that) 和 apart from**

besides 表示“除了……还有”(= in addition to)。例如:

Besides Li Ming, there are many other students attending the meeting. 除了李明, 还有许多其他的学生到会。

except 表示“除了没有”, 强调所排除的“不包括在内”。例如:

He is a capable man except that he has not enough experience. 他是一个能干的人, 只是经验有些欠缺。

except for 也表示“除以外”, 指对某种基本情况进行具体的细节方面的修正。它同 except 的区别是: except for 后所接的词同句子中的整体词(主语)不是同类的, 指从整体中除去一个细节, 一个方面; 而 except 后所接的词同整体词(主语)一般是同类, 指在同类的整体中除去一个部分。例如:

The room is in good condition except for a few dirty spots on the wall. (room 和 spots 不同类) 这间屋子状况很好, 只是墙上有一些污迹。

They looked for the cat everywhere except in the kitchen. 他们到处寻找那只猫, 除了厨房。

(everywhere 和 in the kitchen 均属地点, 是同类词, 故用 except)

The book is well-written except for the poor printing. 除了印刷较差以外, 这本书不失为一本好书。

(book 和 printing 不是同类词, 故用 except for)

**but for 和 except for**

but for 同虚拟语气连用, except for 同陈述语气连用。例如:

But for the sun, nothing could live on the earth. 没有太阳, 地球将无物生存。

Your paper is all right except for a few misprints. 你的论文除了少许拼写错误外, 还算可以。

**but that 和 except that**

but that 和 except that 后的从句一律用陈述语气, 其前面的主句用陈述语气, 但也往往用虚拟语气。这时, 可以看作是主句后的条件从句被省略。例如:

I would do it right now except that I am too busy. (= if I were not very busy ) 如果不是太忙, 我会马上行动。

but 也可表示“除……外”, 用法同 except 基本相同(除外的不算在内)。but 和 except 后都可以跟动词不定式作宾语。但要注意的是, 如果谓语动词是 do, 所接的动词不定式不带 to, 否则 to 不可省。例如:

He could do nothing but (except) tell her the truth. 除了告诉她真相, 他别无选择。

They had no choice but (except) to delay their trip. 除了推迟行程, 他们别无选择。

but 通常与 all, every, everybody, anywhere, no, nobody, nothing, who, what, where 等

代词或疑问代词连用。

apart from 意为“除外”，它既可以表示 besides 的意思，也可以表示 except 和 except for 的意思。例如：

He has done good work, apart from a few slight faults. 除了一些小小的失误，他的工作做得很好。(= except for)

The orphan had no one to take care of him apart from his uncle. 除了他的叔叔，这个孤儿无人照顾。(= except)

There were three others present at the meeting apart from Mr. Jack. 除了杰克，另外还有三人到会。(=besides)

#### **out of question 和 out of the question**

out of the question 相当于 quite impossible, 意为“不可能”，一般作表语。out of question 相当于 beyond doubt, 意为“毋庸置疑”，一般作状语。例如：

It's out of the question to ask him to do it. 请他做这件事是不可能的。

She is out of question the best student in the class. 她无疑是这个班最好的学生。

#### **in charge of 和 in the charge of**

in charge of 意为“主管，掌管，看管”，后接被看管的人或物。in the charge of 意为“在……的看管或掌管之下”，后接看管或掌管这一行为的执行者。例如：

Mr. John is in charge of the factory. 这家工厂由约翰先生掌管。

The boy is in the charge of his uncle. 这个男孩由他的叔叔照管。

#### **familiar to 和 familiar with**

使用 be familiar to 时，其主语可以是人或物，但 to 的宾语只能是人，不能是物。而 be familiar with 短语的主语只能是人，后的宾语可以是人或物。例如：

Her handwriting is familiar to me. 我对她的笔迹很熟悉。

I am familiar with the project. 我对这项计划很熟悉。

## II. 学法指导

### • 介词使用规律“口诀” •

介词的用法虽然比较灵活，但也有一定的规律可循。以下是介词的用法口诀，如果能大体记住，就不易出错。当然，至于介词的详尽用法，还需要在实践中摸索，在使用的过程中掌握。

#### 介词的用法口诀

早、午、晚要用 in, at 黎明、午夜、点与分。

年、月、年月、季节、周，阳光、灯、影、衣、帽须用 in。

将来时态 in...以后，小处 at 大处 in。

有形 with 无形 by，用语言、单位、材料为介词 in。

介词 at 和 to 表方向，攻击、位置、恶、善分。

日子、日期、年月日，星期加上早、午、晚用 on，

on 后还接收音机、论著和农场，

年、月、日加早、午、晚，of 之前 on 代 in。

this, that, tomorrow, yesterday, next, last, one。

接年、月、季、星期、周，介词省略已习惯。

over, under 正上下，above, below 则不然，

若与数量词连用，混合使用亦无妨。

before, after 表一点, ago, later 表一段。

before 能接完成时，ago 指过去表时间。

### III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. The car raced through the countryside \_\_\_\_\_ sixty miles an hour.

A. in                      B. at                      C. by                      D. for

答案: C

提示: at 作“以……”解时，用来表示运动速度、价格或服务费用等。如: The train runs at fifty kilometers an hour. in 也有“以”的意思，但多用来表示“以”某种形式、方式或地位等。如: in advisory capacity “以顾问身份”，buy in installments “以分期付款的方式购买”。介词 by 和 for 均不用来表示物体运动的速度。

2. Their office is located \_\_\_\_\_ 1811 Wynnewood Road in Philadelphia, but he's from New Jersey.

A. on                      B. by                      C. at                      D. in

答案: C

提示: at 作“在……”解时，用来表示地点、处所、距离或空间等的一个点，多用于门牌号码、建筑物、火车站、机场、机关、学校、交叉路口、村庄或小城镇等名词前面。如: at the railway station, live at 403. in 也可表示“在某一地点”，可与 at 换用，如: The meeting was held at(in) the hotel.但一般说来，强调“位置”用 at，强调“空

间”则多用 in, 大地方多用 in, 小地方多用 at, 当然这些都是相对来说的。如: Our plane stopped at London Airport on its way to New York. on 和 by 均不可用来表示门牌号码; 因此, 根据题意 C 是正确答案。

3. I do not agree with his political views, but I have nothing \_\_\_\_\_ him .  
A. for                      B. down                      C. from                      D. against

答案: D

提示: against 作“反对”, “不赞成”解时, 也可作表语, 如: Public opinion is strongly against his visit to the country. 本题意为: “……我对他没有意见。”即不反对他。可见除了 D 项, 其余均不合题意。

4. Why he did is \_\_\_\_\_ my comprehension.  
A. before                      B. below                      C. behind                      D. beyond

答案: D

提示: beyond “超出(能力、范围、限度等)”, 其引导的短语可用作表语、定语或状语等, 如: To do this was quite beyond my power. before “在……以前(时间)”, “在……前面(位置)”, “在……之前(次序)”; below “(能力等)低于”, 如: He was below her in intelligence. behind “落后于”, “不如”。如: I am behind him in drawing. 本题意为: “他为什么干这件事, 我不理解”。因此, D 项合题意。

5. The key \_\_\_\_\_ good health is to eat and sleep regularly.  
A. to                      B. for                      C. of                      D. in

答案: A

提示: to “对于”, “至于”, “关于”, 用于表示关系或联系, 如: the right answer to the question. 在英语中, 有很多名词要求由介词 to 引导的短语作定语, 构成固定的搭配。如: the key to a strongbox, the key to success 等; 本题意为: “(关于)保持身体健康的秘诀是饮食和睡眠要有规律。”因此, A 项正确。

6. His account is correct, \_\_\_\_\_ some details are omitted.  
A. except                      B. apart from                      C. besides                      D. except that

答案: D

提示: except 用作介词, 意为“除……之外(没有)”, 其后面可接名词、代词、副词、介词短语、动词不定式(带 to 或不带 to)或由 that, when 引导的从句作宾语。except 指所表达的事情或理由不适合、不包括另一部分。如: Everyone except Smith answered the question correctly. except that 与 except 同义, 但后面要接从句; besides “除……之外(尚有)”, 具有肯定的含义。本题意为: “除了有些细节未提到之外, 他的叙述是正确的。”因此, D 项合题意。

7. The airplane got \_\_\_\_\_ and fell into the troubled sea.  
A. in control                      B. under control                      C. beyond control                      D. out of control

答案: D

提示: (get) out of control “失去控制”; (be) in control (of) “控制(住), 管理”; (be) beyond control “无法控制”; (keep)... under control “对……加以控制”; 因此, D 项正确。

8. Poverty depresses most people, \_\_\_\_\_ my father it was otherwise.

- A. in case                      B. in case of                      C. in the case of                      D. in any case

答案: C

提示: in the case of “就(对)……来说”, “至于”; in case of “假使(万一)……”; in any case “无论如何, 总之”; in case 用作连词接从句, 意为: “假使”, “以防万一”; 本题意为: “贫困使多数人消沉, 但我父亲却不这样。” 因此, C 项正确。

9. If the weather is \_\_\_\_\_ suitable, we will play the match on Tuesday.

- A. by means of                      B. by any means                      C. by no means                      D. in any case

答案: B

提示: by any means “在某种程度上”, “无论如何”; by means of “用”, “依靠”; by no means “决不”, “并没有”; by all means “尽一切办法”, “务必”。因此, B 项正确。

10. It's the first turning \_\_\_\_\_ the left after the traffic lights.

- A. on                      B. for                      C. by                      D. in

答案: A

提示: on “在……旁(靠近)”, “在……(边)” 用于表示对某人或某物来说的方向, 如: Take the first turning on your right. B, C, D 均不与 the left(right)连用, 因此 A 是惟一的正确选择。

11. The Prime Minister's speech was reported \_\_\_\_\_ in all the leading newspapers.

- A. for short                      B. at full                      C. in full                      D. as a whole

答案: C

提示: in full “以全文”, “完全地”; at (the) full “在到达最高点或最充分状态时”; for short “为简略起见”; as a whole “作为一个整体”, “总的说来”; 根据题意, C 是正确答案。

12. She came down to breakfast \_\_\_\_\_, not having brushed her teeth.

- A. in a haste                      B. in no hurry                      C. at a loss                      D. in a hurry

答案: D

提示: in a hurry “匆忙地”, “很快地”; in no hurry “不急于”; in haste “匆忙地”, “草率地”, 短语中没有冠词 a; at a loss “困惑的”, “亏本地”; 句中有 not having brushed her teeth, 因此, D 项正确。

13. His remarks on the subject are much \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. at a point      B. at this point      C. to the point      D. to a point

答案: C

提示: to the point “中肯”, “扼要”; 多与 cut, grow 等连用, 意为“弄尖”, “削尖”(cut to a point); “顶端逐渐尖起来”(grow to a point); at this(that) point “在这(那)个时候(地方)”; at a point “在某地”, 如: at a point near the island; 本题意为: “他对这个问题的评论很中肯。可见 C 合题意。”

14. If you don't have enough cash, why don't you make arrangements to buy the car \_\_\_\_\_ ?

- A. in credit      B. on credit      C. on deposit      D. without a deposit

答案: B

提示: buy (sell) goods on credit “赊购(销)货物”; in credit “存户结存”, “贷方余额”; on deposit “存于银行”; without a deposit “没交保证金”; 根据题意, B 项正确。

15. Some of her paintings are \_\_\_\_\_ in the local art gallery.

- A. in show      B. on the exhibition      C. on show      D. for show

答案: C

提示: on show “展览”, “展出”; in show “表面上”; for show “为了装门面”; on the exhibition 应去掉 the; 显然, C 项正确。

16. When he was in American he made a journey of seven hundred miles \_\_\_\_\_ to get a glimpse of the Niagara.

- A. of purpose      B. on purpose      C. to the purpose      D. beside the purpose

答案: B

提示: on purpose “为了”, “故意地”用作状语; of purpose “有意地”, “故意地”; to the purpose “得要领地”, “中肯的”; beside the purpose “与目的无关”; 题意为: “……他为了看一看尼亚加拉瀑布……”。因此, B 项正确。

17. The coach was \_\_\_\_\_ giving up the game when our team scored two points.

- A. in point of      B. up to a point      C. to the point of      D. on the point of

答案: D

提示: be on(upon) the point of “正要……的时候”, “即将……之时”; in point of “关于”, “就……而言”; up to a point “在某种程度上”; to the point of “到……程度”; 因此, D 项正确。

18. \_\_\_\_\_ my government I have the honor to make to you the following communications.

- A. On behalf of      B. In the face of      C. In place of      D. With respect to

答案: A

提示: on behalf of “代表”, “为了”; in (the) face of “面对”, “即使”; in place of



“代替”; with respect to(of) “关于”, “就……而论”; 本题意为: “我荣幸地代表我国政府向您转达如下内容。”因此, A 项正确。

19. What surprised me was the amount of works still done \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. at hand                      B. in hand                      C. by hand                      D. on hand

答案: C

提示: by hand “手工(做的)”, “用手的”; at hand “近在手边”, “即将到来”; in hand “现有在手头”, “(工作等)在进行中”; on hand “在手上”, “现有的”; 因此, C 项正确。

20. John is not a saving boy; he spends money without thought for the future and lives\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. from hand to hand                      B. from hand to mouth  
C. from mouth to mouth                      D. from start to finish

答案: B

提示: 这四个答案都是固定搭配短语, from hand to mouth “现挣现吃”; from hand to hand “从一人之手转到他人之手”; from mouth to mouth “广泛流传”; from start to finish “自始至终”; 因此, B 项正确。

#### IV. 考级阶梯性练习

##### • 单项语法基础练习 •

- The travelers found shelter \_\_\_\_\_ the rain under a big tree.  
A. form                      B. by                      C. for                      D. against
- Let me pause \_\_\_\_\_ these matters for a time before I make a decision!  
A. about                      B. over                      C. around                      D. on
- We were able to persuade the prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ the wisdom of telling the truth.  
A. into                      B. of                      C. out of                      D. to
- The directors must take steps to ensure \_\_\_\_\_ possible failure.  
A. for                      B. against                      C. out                      D. in
- She wants to know whether the measures have been agreed \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to                      B. with                      C. about                      D. upon
- He has been asked to account \_\_\_\_\_ his absence.  
A. of                      B. on                      C. about                      D. for
- The author gave examples \_\_\_\_\_ support of his argument.

- A. for                      B. to                      C. in                      D. with
8. I promise to look \_\_\_\_\_ the matter as soon as I get back to the head office.  
A. into                      B. for                      C. in                      D. after
9. They left prior \_\_\_\_\_ our arrival.  
A. at                      B. to                      C. by                      D. of
10. You know some of the story, the rest can be picture \_\_\_\_\_ yourself easily enough.  
A. as                      B. to                      C. of                      D. in
11. I could read the answer \_\_\_\_\_ her face.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. over                      D. from
12. People with false teeth find it difficult to bite \_\_\_\_\_ apple.  
A. in                      B. into                      C. off                      D. on
13. Why don't you reveal your thoughts \_\_\_\_\_ me?  
A. for                      B. to                      C. as                      D. with
14. We may have to call all possible forces \_\_\_\_\_ action to defeat the enemy's newest attack.  
A. in                      B. at                      C. into                      D. on
15. You may have to expend a further year \_\_\_\_\_ completing your book.  
A. in                      B. for                      C. on                      D. to
16. There is a well \_\_\_\_\_ the foot of the hill.  
A. at                      B. on                      C. under                      D. below
17. I happened to run across him \_\_\_\_\_ the street the other day.  
A. at                      B. in                      C. along                      D. over
18. Put some straw \_\_\_\_\_ the carpet.  
A. in                      B. beneath                      C. below                      D. to
19. Being chased by a dog, Jack jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the fence.  
A. over                      B. across                      C. on                      D. from
20. The bridge was named \_\_\_\_\_ the hero who gave his life for the cause of the people.  
A. after                      B. with                      C. by                      D. from

• 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. I am very disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ the results of the experiment.  
A. for                      B. at                      C. with                      D. on

2. I promise to look \_\_\_\_\_ the matter as soon as I get back to the head office.  
A. into                    B. for                    C. in                    D. after
3. Hello? Is that 4232491? Please put me \_\_\_\_\_ to the manager.  
A. across                    B. up                    C. through                    D. over
4. Are you conscious \_\_\_\_\_ any reason why he should not teach chemistry?  
A. of                    B. about                    C. from                    D. for
5. The old Roman armies had several generals who took command \_\_\_\_\_ turn.  
A. by                    B. to                    C. in                    D. of
6. The police chief announced that the deaths of two young girls would soon be inquired \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. about                    B. into                    C. of                    D. after
7. According to the urban construction program, old buildings that are \_\_\_\_\_ repair should be blown up.  
A. in                    B. under                    C. out of                    D. beyond
8. They were more than glad to leave their cars parked and walked \_\_\_\_\_ a change.  
A. as                    B. to                    C. for                    D. by
9. Columbus was \_\_\_\_\_ his times in his belief that the earth was round.  
A. in front of                    B. in advance of                    C. before                    D. ahead of
10. In recent years much more emphasis has been put \_\_\_\_\_ developing the students' productive skills.  
A. onto                    B. in                    C. over                    D. on
11. Does everyone have an equal right \_\_\_\_\_ an equal share of its resources?  
A. by                    B. at                    C. to                    D. over
12. What he said just now had little to do with the question \_\_\_\_\_ discussion.  
A. on                    B. in                    C. under                    D. at
13. The British constitution is \_\_\_\_\_ a large extent a product of the historical events described above.  
A. within                    B. to                    C. by                    D. at
14. He will agree to do what you require \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. of                    B. from                    C. to                    D. for
15. By 1929, Mickey Mouse was as popular \_\_\_\_\_ children as Coca-Cola.  
A. for                    B. in                    C. to                    D. with
16. \_\_\_\_\_ one time, Manchester was the home of the most productive cotton mills in the world.

- A. On                      B. By                      C. At                      D. Of
17. Cancer is second only \_\_\_\_\_ heart disease as a cause of death.  
A. of                      B. to                      C. with                      D. from
18. We gave out a cheer when the red roof of the cottage came \_\_\_\_\_ view.  
A. from                      B. in                      C. before                      D. into
19. The survival of civilization as we know it is \_\_\_\_\_ threat.  
A. within                      B. under                      C. towards                      D. upon
20. Anne couldn't concentrate \_\_\_\_\_ what she was doing while her family were watching TV.  
A. to                      B. on                      C. for                      D. in

• 模拟自测题 •

1. Lucy liked the party as the food was greatly \_\_\_\_\_ her taste.  
A. for                      B. in                      C. to                      D. with
2. She came \_\_\_\_\_ because her car had broken down.  
A. by walk                      B. by foot                      C. on foot                      D. on walk
3. The earth moves \_\_\_\_\_ the sun.  
A. round                      B. around                      C. towards                      D. away from
4. Please divide the work \_\_\_\_\_ the two of you.  
A. among                      B. of                      C. to                      D. between
5. I arrived \_\_\_\_\_ Houston \_\_\_\_\_ 10:00 \_\_\_\_\_ January 5.  
A. at... in... at                      B. in... on... at                      C. to... on... at                      D. in... at... on
6. Alice sat \_\_\_\_\_ the corner of the room listening to the radio.  
A. to                      B. in                      C. round                      D. over
7. There are many trucks \_\_\_\_\_ the road.  
A. on                      B. in                      C. at                      D. to
8. An examination is to be held \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the term.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. during
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the end of this term, we shall have learned 20 lessons.  
A. At                      B. To                      C. In                      D. By
10. \_\_\_\_\_ what time do you go to school?  
A. At                      B. Since                      C. From                      D. On
11. John was understandably awkward \_\_\_\_\_ washing up shall.  
A. with                      B. in                      C. on                      D. at
12. That book is identical \_\_\_\_\_ an American one.

- A. with                      B. in                      C. for                      D. at
13. No one is exempt \_\_\_\_\_ taxation in the United State.  
A. in                      B. about                      C. from                      D. with
14. The amount stated was exclusive \_\_\_\_\_ tax.  
A. from                      B. of                      C. in                      D. on
15. Cathy was particular \_\_\_\_\_ the jewellery she wore.  
A. on                      B. at                      C. about                      D. in
16. She worked with great dedication to find a cure \_\_\_\_\_ the disease.  
A. in                      B. for                      C. on                      D. with
17. John got a job, so that he could be independent \_\_\_\_\_ his parents.  
A. of                      B. with                      C. from                      D. at
18. The dog seemed suspicious \_\_\_\_\_ everybody.  
A. to                      B. of                      C. at                      D. on
19. The word is derived \_\_\_\_\_ Latin.  
A. at                      B. in                      C. from                      D. on
20. These mathematical problems are quite \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
A. with                      B. beneath                      C. beyond                      D. out of
21. The railway traffic is \_\_\_\_\_ owing to flash flood.  
A. out of sight      B. out of the blue      C. out of order      D. out of place
22. \_\_\_\_\_ improving his ability to speak French, he spends most of his holidays in France.  
A. To the view      B. In the view of      C. With a view to      D. Out of view of
23. The Panama Canal was constructed in 1915 \_\_\_\_\_ three hundred fifty million dollars.  
A. at half cost to      B. at a cost of      C. at any cost      D. at all costs
24. I don't know whether I'm going by car or by train, but \_\_\_\_\_ I'll need money.  
A. at all events      B. in that event      C. in the event      D. in either event
25. Diabetes is \_\_\_\_\_ most frequent among overweight persons.  
A. by far                      B. far and away      C. thus far                      D. too far
26. He waited \_\_\_\_\_ the volcano became quiet and he was able to return two days later.  
A. until                      B. before                      C. up to                      D. when
27. Many scientists are becoming increasingly convinced that the universe contains millions of inhabited planets \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. like our own      B. like ours is      C. similar as ours      D. as similar to ours
28. "Without Bill, I doubt if we'll be able to win."

- “Don't worry. He's going to play \_\_\_\_\_ his injury.”  
 A. despite            B. although            C. in spite            D. even with
29. They were all rescued \_\_\_\_\_ the captain, who stayed behind to safeguard the vessel.  
 A. except            B. besides            C. with            D. without
30. It's no use ringing me at the office this week because I'm \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 A. by my leave    B. at leave            C. in holidays        D. on holiday
31. The millionaire was threatened \_\_\_\_\_ death by his kidnappers.  
 A. for            B. with            C. by            D. against
32. We all agreed with him \_\_\_\_\_ his proposals \_\_\_\_\_ a Christmas party.  
 A. to...on        B. on ... for        C. about ... for      D. on ... of
33. He will soon get \_\_\_\_\_ his disappointment and be quite cheerful again by the morning.  
 A. out of            B. over            C. away from        D. through
34. You could tell from his big ears that he \_\_\_\_\_ his father.  
 A. took after        B. took over        C. took off            D. took from
35. She \_\_\_\_\_ us because she went to an expensive school.  
 A. looks up        B. looks down      C. looks down upon    D. looks up to

## V. 参考答案

### 单项语法基础练习

1. A    2. D    3. B    4. B    5. D    6. D    7. C    8. A    9. B    10. B  
 11. A    12. B    13. B    14. C    15. B    16. A    17. B    18. B    19. A    20. A

### 单项语法坡度练习

1. B    2. A    3. C    4. A    5. C    6. B    7. D    8. C    9. D    10. D  
 11. C    12. C    13. B    14. A    15. A    16. C    17. B    18. D    19. B    20. B

### 模拟自测题

1. A    2. C    3. A    4. D    5. D    6. B    7. A    8. C    9. D    10. A  
 11. D    12. A    13. C    14. B    15. C    16. B    17. A    18. B    19. C    20. C  
 21. C    22. C    23. B    24. A    25. A    26. A    27. A    28. A    29. A    30. D  
 31. B    32. B    33. B    34. A    35. C

# 第九章

## 句 子

句子是由词、词组构成的基本的语法单位，表达一个完整的意思。

### I. 语法精要讲解

#### 1) 一般要点讲解

通常，我们可以从两个不同的角度对句子进行分类：一是根据说话人的意图；二是按句子的结构。按这种方法，根据说话人的意图，我们可以将英语句子分成四类：陈述句(declarative sentence)，疑问句(interrogative sentence)，祈使句(imperative sentence)和感叹句(exclamatory sentence)。

如果按照句子的结构分类，英文句子可分为三个类别：简单句(simple sentence)，并列句(compound sentence)和复合句(complex sentence)。本章节重点讨论按结构分类的三种句子结构。

#### (1) 简单句(simple sentences)

只有一个主谓关系，句子可能有两个或更多的主语，也可能有两个或更多的谓语，但是句子中的主谓关系只有一个。

句子的基本句型(basic sentence patterns)有五种，英语中千变万化的句子归根结底都是由以下五种基本句型组合、扩展、变化而来的。

① 主 + 动(sv)(s=subjective, v=predicate verb)。例如：

I work. 我工作。

SV 结构中的动词往往是不及物动词或不及物动词短语。

② 主 + 动 + 表(svc)(c=compliment)。例如：

John is busy. 约翰忙。

除了系动词 be 可构成 SVC 结构外，feel, taste, smell, look, get, become 等动词也可以构成 svc 结构。

③ 主 + 动 + 宾(svo)(o=direct object)。例如：

She studies English. 她学英语。

构成 svo 句型的谓语动词应该是及物动词。这些动词后面只跟一个宾语，因此它们被称作单宾语及物动词(mono-transitive verb)。

④ 主 + 动 + 宾 + 补(svoc)。例如：

Time would prove me right. 时间会证明我是对的。

这种句型的谓语动词只限于某些能带复杂宾语(complex object)的及物动词，叫做复杂宾语及物动词(complex transitive verb)。

⑤ 主 + 动 + 间宾 + 直宾(svoo)(o=indirect object)。例如：

My mother made me a new dress. 我母亲给我做了一件新衣裳。

构成 svoo 句型的谓语动词一般只限于那些能跟双宾语的及物动词(di-transitive verb)如：envy, forgive, save, ask, give, pay, borrow 等。

## (2) 并列句(compound sentences)

并列句有两个或两个以上的主谓结构。这些主谓结构之间的关系是并列的、对等的。从语法上讲，所谓“并列”、“对等”是指任何一个主谓结构都能独立地表达意思，谁也不从属于谁。尽管如此，这些主谓结构在意思或逻辑上有一定程度的内在联系。通过并列连词使两个或几个主谓结构的分句连接在一起。并列连词用来连接平行对等(即互不从属)的分句。按其表示的不同意思有以下几种表达。

① 表示转折意思：but, yet, however, nevertheless。例如：

John has his shortcomings; however, that doesn't mean he is not qualified for the job. 约翰有缺点，但这不等于说他不胜任这份工作。

The food was good, but he had little appetite. 食物很精美，但他却没什么胃口。

② 表示因果关系：or, so, therefore, hence。例如：

Hurry up, or you will be late. 快点，要不你就迟到了。

The town was built on the side of a hill, hence it's named Hillside. 这个小镇建在山旁，所以叫“山旁”。

③ 表示并列关系：and, or, either...or, neither...nor, not only...but (also), both...and, as well as。例如：

She came to my house yesterday evening, and I went to hers. 昨晚她来我家了，我却去她家了。

Either you tell him the truth, or I do it. 不是你告诉他事实，就是我来告诉。

## (3) 复合句(complex sentences)

复合句有两个或两个以上的主谓结构。从表面上看，它与并列句相似，但后者的几个主谓结构之间的关系是并列的、对等的；复合句中的主谓结构之间的关系不是并列的、对等的，而是有主次之分。其中只有一个主谓结构是主要的，称为主句(main clause)，其他的主谓结构都从属于主句，称为从句(subordinate clause)。

从句可分为主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句、同位语从句(这四种句子也可称为名



词性从句 nominal clause)、定语从句、状语从句等，它们分别由不同的连接词、连接代词或连接副词来引导。

① 主语从句(subject clause) 相当于一个名词的作用，在句子中作主语。它通常是由连词 that, whether 或代词 who, that, which, what 或副词 when, where, how, why 等引导的。例如：

Whether he comes or not doesn't make any difference to me. 他来与不来对我都一样。

Who grasps science is a very important question. 谁掌握科学是一个非常重要的问题。

② 表语从句(predicative clause)在句中作表语，位于系动词之后，通常是由连词 that, whether 或代词 what 或副词 where, why 等引导的。例如：

China is not what it used to be. 中国不是它过去的样子了。

That is what I want to say. 那就是我要说的。

③ 宾语从句(object clause)相当于一个名词的作用，在句子中作宾语。它通常是由连词 that, whether, if 或代词 what, which, who, whom 或副词 when, where, why, how 等引导的。连词 that 在口语中常被省略。例如：

There is disagreement among economists about what money is and how money is measured. 什么是货币以及怎样计量货币经济学家之间存有分歧。

Teacher Wang told us that he was much better. 王老师说他身体已经好多了。

④ 同位语从句(appositive clause)就是在句子中担当同位语的主谓结构。在使用同位语从句时要特别注意：尽管主从连词 that 在同位语从句中没有任何意义，但却不能省略。另外，同位语从句常用于下面这些名词的后面：fact 事实，fear 担心，害怕，belief 信念，意见，evidence 证据，hope 希望，idea 想法，news 新闻，doubt 怀疑，suggestion 建议，motion 动议，proposal 提议，order 命令，recommendation 推荐，等等。例如：

There is the news that an American delegation will arrive in Beijing tomorrow afternoon. 有消息说，一个美国代表团将于明天下午抵达北京。

Is there any proof that the food of plant differs from that of animals? 有没有什么证据说明植物性食品不同于动物性食品？

⑤ 状语从句(adverbial clause)相当于一个副词的作用，可以修饰主句中的动词、形容词、副词等，在句子中作状语。状语从句可以放在句首或句末。当它放在句首时，从句后面通常用逗号分开；当它放在句末时，从句前面一般不用逗号。

状语从句可分时间、地点、目的、原因、结果、方式、条件、让步等 10 种。

A. 时间状语从句。

常用的关联词有：when 当……时候，whenever 在任何时候，while 当……时候，as 正当……时，every / each time 每次，before 在……以前，after 在……以后，since

自……以来, till / until 直到……, as soon as 一……就, the moment 一……就, the minute 一……就, hardly ... when 刚……就……, no sooner ... than 刚……就……, 等。  
例如:

No sooner had I got back to the kitchen than the door-bell rang loud enough to wake the dead. 我刚走回厨房,门铃又响了,响得足以把死人吵醒。

Barely had the committee entered into the matter, when he felt dizzy.

委员会刚开始讨论此事,他就感到头晕了。

As he was carrying out the experiment, he found something abnormal.

正当他在做试验时,他发现情况有些不正常。

B. 地点状语从句。

常用的关联词有: where 在……地方, wherever 无论在什么地方, 等。例如:

The university graduates are determined to go wherever they are needed most. 那些大学毕业生们决心去最需要他们的地方。

C. 条件状语从句。

常用的关联词有: if 如果, 假如, unless 除非, 要不……就不, as long as 只要, so long as(只要), provided (that) 只要, suppose / supposing 假设, on condition (that)如果, 等。  
例如:

What shall we do if we can not get the necessary data?

如果我们弄不到必要的数据怎么办?

D. 原因状语从句。

常用的关联词有: because 因为, as 由于, for 由于, since 既然, 由于, now that 既然, 由于, not that ... but that 不是因为……而是因为……, 等。例如。

He can't deliver his lectures today because he has got a bad cold.

他今天不能去讲课了,因为他患了重感冒。

E. 让步状语从句。

常用的关联词有: though 虽然, although 虽然, as 尽管, 虽然, even if 即使, even though 即使, however 不管怎样, whatever 无论什么, whoever 无论谁, no matter when (how, what, who, where, which) 无论何时(怎样, 什么, 谁, 何地, 哪个), whether ... or 不管……, 等。例如:

Air exists everywhere although we can't see it.

尽管我们看不见空气,但它却无处不在。

No matter where you go on the earth, you will feel the gravity.

无论你走到地球的什么地方,你都会感觉到地心引力。

F. 方式状语从句。

常用的关联词有: as 如同, 按照, as if 似乎, 仿佛, as though 似乎, 仿佛等。例如:

He speaks English almost as a native speaker does.

他的英文说得几乎如讲英语母语的人一样。

G. 目的状语从句。

常用的关联词有: so that 以便, 为了, in order that 为了, lest 以免, 以防, in case 以免, 以防, for fear 以免, 以防, 等。例如:

We should do our utmost in order that we may be able to over-fulfill the task.

为了超额完成任务, 我们应该全力以赴。

H. 结果状语从句。

常用的关联词有: that 结果, 以致, so that 结果, 以致, so ... that 如此……以致, such ... that 如此……以致, 等。例如:

The temperature is increased so that the volume of gas becomes greater.

温度升高了, 气体的体积就增大了。

I. 比较状语从句。

常用的关联词有: than 比……, as...as 如……一样, the + 比较级……, the + 比较级……, 越……越……, 等。例如:

Her mother is not as tall as she (is). 她妈妈没有她高。

He is taller than his brother. 他比他弟弟个子高一些。

J. 程度状语从句。

常用关联词有: to such extent that... ,to such a degree that 等。例如:

The temperature lowered to such a degree that the water froze.

气温降到了很低, 连水都结冰了。

⑥ 定语从句 (attributive clause) 起形容词的作用, 在句子中作定语。它是由关系代词 who, whom, whose, which, that 或关系副词 where, when 等引导的。定语从句放在它修饰的词后面。例如:

He is the man who we just talked about. 他就是我们刚才谈到的那个人。

定语从句分限定性定语从句与非限定性定语从句。这两种定语从句在其功能和形式方面都有明显的区别。

A. 限定性定语从句与主句的关系很紧凑, 对其先行词起限定、修饰的作用。如果将其去掉, 会影响句子意思的完整性; 有时甚至引起误解。例如:

Ocean currents affect the climates of the lands near which they flow. 洋流影响其流经的附近地区的气候。(如果省去其后的定语从句, 其句意则变得模糊, 不完整。)

This is the skirt that my mother gave me as a present at my 20-year-old birthday party. 这是在我 20 岁生日时母亲送给我作礼物的那件裙子。(如果省去其后的定语从句, 在没有上下文的情况下, 此句易使读者产生误解。)

B. 非限定性定语从句在形式上与主句很松散，它与主句之间用一个逗号“，”隔开；它对其先行词没有限定、修饰的作用，只起补充、说明的作用。有时也用它来对全句进行补充、说明。即使将其去掉，也不会影响句子意思。由于上述原因，非限定性定语从句在表达意思方面也有别于限定性定语从句。另外，非限定性定语从句在中文译文里，我们往往将其作为一个分句处理，而不把它作定语翻译。例如：

The sun heats the earth, which makes it possible for plants to grow. 太阳给予大地热量，这就使植物的生长成为可能。(此句中，非限定性定语从句是对全句进行补充、说明，将全句表达的意思看成一件事情。)

The old man has a son, who is in the army. 那位老人有一个儿子，他在部队工作。(此句中，非限定性定语从句是对先行词 son 进行补充、说明。但本句所传达的信息是：“这位老人只有一个儿子”。如果将此句改写成限定性定语从句：

The old man has a son who is in the army. 那位老人有一个在部队工作的儿子。那么，限定性定语从句就要对先行词 son 进行限定、修饰。这样一来，句子所传达的信息就变成了：“这位老人有一个儿子在部队工作，还有其他的儿子在干别的工作”。)

## 2) 特殊要点讲解

### (1) 简单句的特殊要点讲解

① 一些常规的反意疑问句，大家都很熟悉，这里介绍一些特殊的反意疑问句。

A. 陈述部分的主语是 I'm...句型时，疑问部分要用 aren't I。例如：

I'm an English teacher, aren't I? 我是一名英语老师，不是吗？

B. 陈述部分是感叹句时，疑问部分用 be + 主语。例如：

What beautiful hats, aren't they? 多么漂亮的帽子，不是吗？

A. 陈述部分是省去主语的祈使句时，疑问部分用 will you。例如：

Don't be late next time, will you? 下次不要迟到了，好吗？

Come here, will you / won't you? 到这儿来，好吗？

注意：let's 开头的祈使句，疑问部分用 shall we, let us 开头的祈使句，疑问部分用 will you。例如：

Let's start with the song, shall we? 咱们以这首歌开始，好吗？

Let us help you, will you? 让我们帮助你，好吗？

B. 陈述部分的谓语是 wish，疑问部分要用 may + 主语。例如：

I wish to go to Beijing, may I? 我希望去北京，好吗？

C. 陈述部分用 no, nothing, nobody, never, few, seldom, hardly, rarely, little 等否定含义的词时，疑问部分用肯定含义。例如：

They never go there, do they? 他们从不去那儿，是吗？

D. 含有 ought to 的反意疑问句，陈述部分是肯定的，疑问部分用 shouldn't / oughtn't + 主语。例如：

He ought to know what to do, oughtn't he? / shouldn't he?

他应该知道该做什么，对吗？

E. **must** 在表示“推测”时，根据其推测的情况来确定反意疑问句。例如：

He must be Tom, isn't he? 他一定是汤姆，不是吗？

It must be going to rain tomorrow, won't it? 明天肯定要下雨，不是吗？

You must have studied English for four years, haven't you? / didn't you? 你一定学了4年英语，不对吗？

He must have finished it yesterday, didn't he? 他肯定是在昨天完成任务的，不是吗？

F. 陈述部分的谓语是 **used to** 时，疑问部分用 **didn't** + 主语或 **usen't** + 主语。例如：

He used to be a bad boy, didn't he? / usen't he? 他过去是个坏男孩，不是吗？

G. 陈述部分由 **neither... nor**, **either... or** 连接的并列主语时，疑问部分根据其实际逻辑意义而定。例如：

Neither you nor I am a teacher, are we? 你不是老师，我也不是，对吗？

H. 陈述部分主语是指示代词或不定代词 **everything**, **that**, **nothing**, **this**，疑问部分主语用 **it**。例如：

Everything is ready, isn't it? 一切就绪，不是吗？

I. 陈述部分为主语从句或并列复合句，疑问部分有三种情况：

a. 并列复合句的疑问部分，谓语动词根据邻近从句的谓语而定。例如：

Mr. Smith had been to Shanghai for several times, he should have been in China now, shouldn't he? 史密斯先生曾几次去过上海，按理说他现在应该在中国，不是吗？

b. 带有定语从句、宾语从句的主从复合句，疑问部分谓语根据主句的谓语而定。例如：

He said he wanted to visit Urumqi, didn't he?

他说他想去乌鲁木齐看看，他是那样说的吗？

c. 陈述部分主句为第一人称，谓语是 **think**, **believe**, **expect**, **suppose**, **imagine** 等引导的宾语从句，疑问部分与宾语从句相对应构成反意疑问句。例如：

I don't think he is clever, is he? 我认为他并不聪明，是吗？

We believe she can do it better, can't she? 我们相信她能做得更好，她不能吗？

② 在 **svc** 结构中，英文中的系动词主要是指 **be** 动词的各种变化形式，也包括那些有时起系动词作用的实义动词。这类动词常见的有：**become** 变成，**look** 看上去，**seem** 看起来，**appear** 相似，显得，**get** 变得，**feel** 摸起来，**grow** 变得，**turn** 变成，**remain** 仍然是，**come** 变得，**fall** 变得，**smell** 闻起来，**sound** 听起来，**taste** 尝起来等。例如：

The garden smells pleasant. 这座花园香气宜人。

Silk feels soft and smooth. 丝绸摸起来又软又滑。

③ 在 **svoo** 结构中谓语动词后接两个宾语：前一个宾语称为“间接宾语”，多由代

词或名词充当；后一个宾语称为“直接宾语”，往往由名词充当。这类句型常有“给某人某物”、“送某人某物”、“留给某人某物”等意思。常见的这类谓语动词有：give 给某人……，bring 带给某人……，tell 告诉某人……，send 送给某人……，leave 留给某人……，pass 递给某人……，read 给某人读……，write 给某人写……，take 给某人拿……，show 给某人看……，teach 教某人……，get 给某人弄到……，award 授予某人……，lend 借给某人……，rent 租赁某人……，buy 给某人买……，pay 支付某人……，hand 递给某人……，recommend 将某人推荐给……等。(注：上面各词的中文释义是刻意按照该词的常用动词句型而给的，以便于大家更好地理解该词出现于哪个基本句型中。)例如：

He showed me his new radio. 他给我看他的新收音机。

Please pass me that salt bottle! 请把盐瓶递给我!

④ svoc 句型概括了这样一种情况：有些及物动词的后面有时常带复合宾语结构(即：宾语 + 宾语补足语)。在这一结构中，宾语补足语是对宾语“做什么”、“怎么样”等方面进行补充说明，从意义和结构上来说是不可少的。在这一结构中，宾语和谓语动词当然是“动宾关系”，而宾语和它的补足语在逻辑上却是“主谓关系”。那么，这时的宾语就类似于中文里的“兼语式”。宾语补足语可由名词、形容词、动词不定式、分词或介词短语担当。常带复合宾语结构的及物动词有：elect 选举，feel 感觉到，find 发现，get 使得，have 使，让，hear 听到，imagine 想像，keep 保持，make 使，notice 注意到，see 看见，let 使，smell 闻到，start 使……开始，watch 注视，看，appoint 任命，believe 相信，call 称，catch 发现，allow 容许，ask 请求，要求，cause 使得，consider 认为，expect 预期，know 知道，tell 告诉，think 想，认为，listen to 听，look at 看，瞧等。例如：

This money allows me to buy a car. 这笔钱可使我买一部小汽车。

The court would not even consider his claim for the old man's legacy. 法庭根本不会考虑他所提出的对老人遗产的要求。

## (2) 复合句的特殊要点讲解

① 在主语从句中，有几个问题值得我们注意。

A. 尽管主从连词 that 在主语从句中没有任何意义，但一般不能省略。例如：

That there is no elevator in the building is the critical inconvenience .

这幢楼里没有电梯是极大的不便之处。

B. 为了保持句子平衡或在正式文体中，常用先行词 it 代替主语从句而将主语从句置于句末。例如：

It remains a question whether he'll come or not. 他是否会来，依然是一个问题。

C. 在 it + be + 形容词/ 名词 + that 从句的结构中，由于某些形容词 / 名词的原因，that 从句中的谓语动词要用虚拟式。这类形容词 / 名词常见的有：essential 绝对必要的，important 重要的，advisable 明智的，desirable 希望能够的，imperative 必需的，natural

自然的, **necessary** 必要的, **regretful** 遗憾的, **strange** 奇怪的, **proper** 适当的, **urgent** 紧急的, **duty** 义务, 责任, **a pity** 遗憾, **no wonder** 难怪, **a regret** 遗憾。例如:

**It is strange that he (should) say so.** 他居然会这样说, 真是奇怪。

**It is a great pity that you (should) think so.** 你居然会这样想, 真是一件憾事。

② 在宾语从句中, 有几个问题值得我们注意。

A. **if** 引导的宾语从句不能作介词的宾语, 而只有用 **whether** 引导才行。例如:

**I have no idea about whether I can raise the money for buying a car.**

我不知道我是否能为买车筹措到资金。

B. 某些动词后面, 宾语从句的谓语要求用虚拟式。

这类要求宾语从句的谓语用虚拟式的动词, 常见的有: **command** 命令, **demand** 要求, **desire** 希望, **insist** 坚持, **order** 命令, **propose** 提议, **recommend** 推荐, **request** 要求, **require** 要求, **suggest** 建议, 等。例如:

**He proposed that we (should) set a dead line for the complement of the plan.**

他提议拟定一个执行计划的期限。

③ 在时间状语从句中 **when**, **whenever**, **while** 和 **as** 这几个连词在表达意思方面比较接近, 但是也有一定的区别。

**whenever** 是 **when** 的强调形式; **while** 和 **as** 的后面都可以用来表示“正值什么时候”或是“一边……一边……”的意思, 因此后面都可以接“进行时”; 另外, 如果将 **when** 改写在主句之前, 可表示主句谓语动作发生的突然性。例如:

**While she was watching TV, she was cracking seeds.** 她一边看电视, 一边嗑瓜子。

**As he was doing his packing, some of his friends came to say good-bye to him.**

正当他在收拾行装的时候, 他的一些朋友来向他告别。

**They were ready to go out when the telephone rang.** 就在他们准备出去的时候, 电话铃响了。(这个句子表示主句谓语动作 **rang** 发生的突然性。按常规应该是: **When they were ready to go out, the telephone rang.**)

④ 在原因状语从句中, 应注意以下两点:

A. **because**, **as** 和 **for** 这三个词都是表示原因的连词, 其中以 **because** 的语气为最强, 它表示导致某事情发生的“直接原因”; 而 **as** 和 **for** 则表示某些“间接的理由”。另外, **as** 引导的原因状语从句可以放在句首, 而 **for** 则不行。例如:

**Because it is raining heavily, we have to change our plan to go outing.**

现在下着这么大的雨, 我们不得不改变去郊游的计划。

**As the weather was fine, we decided to climb up the mountain.**

由于天气晴朗, 我们决定去登山。

**She is loved by all for she is kind and pretty.**

由于她长得漂亮、人又好, 所以深受大家喜欢。

B. *since* 和 *now that* 在表示原因的时候是近义词，都有表示“既然”的意思。但其不同之处在于：*now that* 只能以“新发生的情况”作为某事发生的原因；而 *since* 在表示“既然”意思的时候就没有这种限制。例如：

*Now that the rain is going to stop, we'd better get ready for the afternoon's match.*

既然雨要停了，我们最好为下午的比赛做好准备。(此句中，*now that* 引出的从句显然是表示“新出现的情况”，在句子中作主句动作发生的原因。也就是说，只有在这种情况下才可以用 *now that* 引导从句，是表示“既然”的意思。)

*Since you're so interested in English, why not have a try in the English Speech Contest?*

既然你对英语这么有兴趣，为什么不试一试参加英语演讲比赛？

⑤ 在让步状语从句中，应注意以下两点：

A. 在中文里，我们有“虽然……但是”的表达方式；英文里 *though, although* 都表示“虽然”，*but* 表示“但是”；这种情况特别容易误导我们在英文句子里犯错误，因为 *though, although* 与 *but* 不能连用。在英文句子中，*though, although* 引导主从复合句，表示“虽然……但是”；*but* 引导并列句也表示“虽然……但是”。例如：

*Although he is old, he is still energetic.* 尽管他上了年纪，却还是精力充沛。(主从复合句，正确)

*He is old but (he is) still energetic.* 尽管他上了年纪，却依然精力充沛。(并列句，正确)

*Although he is old, but he is still energetic.* (错误)

B. 当 *as* 作“尽管，虽然”的意思讲引导让步状语从句时，从句往往放在主句的前面，而且用作让步的部分总是提前到句首。例如：

*Old as he is, he is still energetic.* 尽管他上了年纪，却依然精力充沛。(表语作为让步的内容，因此提前了。)

*Try as he might, he couldn't solve the problem.* 尽管他很努力但还是无法解决这个问题。(谓语提前)

*Much as you suspected him, you couldn't provide powerful evidence.* 虽然你非常怀疑他，但是你却无法提供有力的证据。(状语作为让步的内容，因此提前了。)

⑥ 定语从句中，*that* 与 *which* 的区别：

A. 在下列情况下一般只用 *that* 而不用 *which*：

a. 先行词本身是 *all, everything, something, nothing, anything* 等不定代词时。例如：  
*Anything that can burn is a source of heat energy.* 任何能够燃烧的东西都是热能源。

*There must be something that happened to you.* 你一定出了什么事。

b. 先行词已有序数词或形容词的最高级或 *the last, the only, the same* 等作定语时。例如：

*This is the most impressive TV theater that has never been put on show before.*



这是以前从未上演过的最有感染力的电视剧。

**We have to consider the first thing that starts our work.**

我们必须考虑启动我们工作的第一件事。

**B. 在下列情况下只用 which 而不用 that:**

a. 当先行词表示事物意义，并且在从句中作介词的宾语时，就只能用 which。当然，如果在口语或非正式文体中，介词没有提前，也就没有这个要求了。例如：

**The world in which we live is made of matter.** 我们生活的世界是由物质组成的。

**The world that we live in is made of matter.** 我们生活于其中的世界是由物质组成的。

b. 在非限定性定语从句中，当关系词表示事物意义时，只能用 which。这是语法所规定的，没有任何解释。例如：

**The sun heats the earth, which makes it possible for plants to grow.**

太阳给予大地热量，这就使植物的生长成为可能。

⑦ 定语从句与同位语从句的区别主要有两点：一是形式上或结构上；二是意义上。

A. 在形式上，定语从句的引导词 that 在句中充当句子的成分：主语、动词宾语、介词宾语、表语等。而同位语从句的引导词 that 在句中不充当任何成分。例如：

**It is a question that needs careful consideration.**

这是一个需要认真考虑的问题。

**It is a universal truth that the earth rotates round the sun.**

地球绕着太阳转，这是个真理。

B. 在意义上，定语从句跟它所修饰的词是限定关系；同位语从句则是对前名词的内容的具体化，是同义反复。例如：

**This is the man to whom I referred.**

这就是我提到的那个人。

**Then arose the question where we were to get the machines needed.**

这时就产生了这样一个问题：我们到哪儿去找所需要的机器。

⑧ 定语从句与强调句的区别：

在定语从句中，起修饰限定作用的关系代词或关系副词有很多：who, when, where, that, which, whose 等，而在强调句中，除了所强调的成分是“人”时用 who 或 whom 以外，所强调的其他成分都用 that 来引导。It is / was... that / who/ whom... 例如：

**Those who want to go please sign their names here.** 想去的人请在这里签名。

**It is he who has made such a stupid mistake.** 犯了如此愚蠢错误的人是他。

**It was ten years later that I met him.** 我遇见他是在十年之后。

## II. 学法指导

### · 状语从句与分词之间转换的两个条件 ·

时间、原因等状语从句可以转换分词作状语，但这种转换是有条件的，也有一定的规律可循。

条件一：从句与主句的主语一致。

① 从句的主语与主句的主语一致时，从句如果表示主动、完成、进行的动作，则转换成现在分词；如果表示被动，则转换成过去分词。例如：

**They did not go to the Summer Palace because they had a lot of work to do.**

他们没去颐和园是因为他们有许多工作要做。

由于从句的主语与主句的主语都是 **they**，可以把从句中 **because** 和 **they** 去掉，把 **had** 变成 **having**，即成现在分词短语作原因状语：

**Having a lot of work to do, they did not go the Summer Palace.**

**The boy later went up to his teacher and said “sorry” because he was greatly touched by his words.**

那男孩后来走向老师，说了声“对不起”，因为他被老师的话深深地触动了。

从句中，**he** 与 **touched** 是被动关系，是“孩子被深深地触动了”，需变成过去分词作原因状语。

**Greatly touched by his teacher’s words, the boy later went up to him and said “sorry”.**

② 如果从句的主语与主句的主语不一致时，我们可以把从句变换一下句型，变成被动语态。然后再按照第一条进行变化。例如：

**As the heroes’ deeds moved them deeply, they decide to study even harder.**

由于那些英雄的事迹深深地感动了他们，他们决定更加努力学习。

句中，主句的主语是 **they**，而从句主语是 **the heroes’ deeds**，主语不一致。这时，可以把从句变换一下句型，即成 **As they were deeply moved by the heroes’ deeds** 从句的主语与主句的主语都是 **they**，就可转换成：

**Deeply moved by the heroes’ deeds, they decided to study even harder.**

条件二：用连词来表达并列句或主从句之间的意义关系。例如：

**He recognized the man who had been his classmate ten years before, so he went over to say hello to him.**

他认出了那个人是他十年前的同学，于是他走过去跟他打招呼。

**so** 是并列连词，表示“因此，于是”等意思。这样一来，前面那一句就有表示原因的意味。这一句可以改写为：

**Because he recognized the man who had been his classmate ten years before, he went**

over to say hello to him.

变成一个原因状语从句，即可转换成现在分词作原因状语：

Recognizing the man who had been his classmate ten years before, he went over to say hello to him.

The professor came into the lab. A group of students followed him.

那位教授走进实验室，后面跟着一群学生。

这是两个简单句，如果中间加个 and 也可看成并列句。但主语不同，可以先把第二句变成 he was followed by a group of students 全句就转换成：

Followed by a group of students, the professor came into the lab.

### III. 历年语法考试真题精选精解

1. A good many proposals were raised by the delegates, \_\_\_\_\_ was to be expected.

- A. that                      B. what                      C. so                      D. as

答案：D

提示：as 用来引导非限定性定语从句，只能在句中充当主语。

译文：正如所预料的一样，许多代表提出了很多好的建议。

2. \_\_\_\_\_ I admire David as a poet, I do not like him as a man.

- A. Much as                      B. Only if  
C. If only                      D. As much

答案：A

提示：表示程度的副词位于句首时，所在的从句发生部分倒装，为让步状语从句。

译文：尽管我敬佩作为诗人的大卫，但我不喜欢作为常人的他。

3. Many patients insist on having watches with them in hospital, \_\_\_\_\_ they have no schedules to keep.

- A. even though                      B. for  
C. as if                      D. since

答案：A

提示：只有 A (引导让步状语从句) 可将主从句衔接起来，其他选项使句子逻辑出现问题。

译文：许多病人坚持带着表去医院，即使他们没有什么日程安排。

4. We booked rooms at the hotel \_\_\_\_\_ we should find no vacancies on our arrival.

- A. whenever                      B. if                      C. since                      D. lest

答案：D

提示: lest 意为“惟恐, 以免”。其他选项的意义不适合。

译文: 我们预定了饭店的房间, 以免我们到达时发现没有空房间了。

5. Color and sex are not relevant \_\_\_\_\_ whether a person is suitable for the job.

- A. on                      B. for                      C. to                      D. with

答案: C

提示: be relevant to 意思是“与……有关的”。

译文: 肤色和性格与一个人是否适应这项工作没有关系。

6. Small as it is, the ant is as much a creature as \_\_\_\_\_ all other animals on the earth.

- A. are                      B. do                      C. is                      D. have

答案: A

提示: 这是一句倒装句, 从句的主语是 animals, 因此, 应该用复数形式。

译文: 虽然蚂蚁很小, 但也是和地球上其他动物一样的生物。

7. We can accept your order \_\_\_\_\_ payment is made in advance.

- A. in the belief that                      B. in order that  
C. on the excuse that                      D. on condition that

答案: D

提示: D 意为“条件是, 如果”。

译文: 我们可以接受你方的订单, 条件是预先付款。

8. In India more than one hundred languages are spoken, \_\_\_\_\_ which only fourteen are recognized as official.

- A. of                      B. in                      C. with                      D. within

答案: A

提示: 此句可改为“ In India, more than one hundred languages are spoken, and only fourteen of them are recognized as official.”

译文: 在印度有 100 多种语言, 其中只有 14 种语言被官方承认。

9. She had a tense expression on her face, \_\_\_\_\_ she were expecting trouble.

- A. even though                      B. as though  
C. even as                      D. now that

答案: B

提示: as though 意思是“好像, 仿佛”。其后一般要用虚拟语气。

译文: 她表情紧张, 好像真有什么麻烦似的。

10. Don't let the child play with scissors \_\_\_\_\_ he cuts himself.

- A. only if                      B. in case                      C. now that                      D. so that

答案: B



不对。which 不能引导定语从句修饰 all, 所以 B 不对。C 中的 that 指代不清, 不合句法也可排除。

译文: 这些人曾经既有名望又富有, 但现在他们是一贫如洗。

16. \_\_\_\_\_ their work will give us a much better feel for the wide differences between the two schools of thought.

- A. To have reviewed                      B. Having reviewed  
C. Reviewing                                D. Being reviewed

答案: C

提示: 本题考查动名词短语作主语, 因为“回顾”这一动作可与主句动词同时发生, 所以用一般时而不是用完成时。A 也是过于强调动作已先于主句动词完成了而不合题意。

译文: 回顾他们的作品将会使我们对于这两个学派之间的重大分歧有更好的理解。

17. By the time you get to New York, I \_\_\_\_\_ for London.

- A. would be leaving                      B. am leaving  
C. have already left                      D. shall have left

答案: D

提示: 时态搭配题。时间状语用一般现在时, 主句要用将来的某种时态。又因时间状语是 by the time 所以要用将来完成时。

译文: 当你到达纽约时我已经离开那儿前往伦敦了。

18. There was such a long line at the exhibition \_\_\_\_\_ we had to wait for about half an hour.

- A. as                      B. that                      C. so                      D. hence

答案: B

提示: 逻辑搭配题。so...that 和 such...that 都是固定搭配。意为“太……以至于……”。

译文: 展览会前排了长队, 我们不得不等了大约半小时。

19. The millions of calculations involved, had they been done by hand, \_\_\_\_\_ all practical value by the time they were finished.

- A. had lost                                  B. would lost  
C. would have lost                      D. should have lost

答案: C

提示: 本题考查与过去情况相反的虚拟语气中主从句的时态运用。由省略 if 而倒装的从句时态(had+过去分词)可知主句时态应为 would+have+过去分词。

译文: 数以百万计的有关计算如果是人工完成的话, 到计算完成时早已失去其实际价值了。

20. The fire was finally brought under control, but not \_\_\_\_\_ extensive damage

had been caused.

- A. after                      B. before                      C. since                      D. as

答案: B

提示: 本题考查 before 的意义和用法。它表示“……之后, 才……”。

译文: 火势最终得到控制却造成了巨大的破坏。

21. Rod is determined to get a seat for the concert \_\_\_\_\_ it means standing in a queue all night.

- A. provided                      B. whatever                      C. even if                      D. as if

答案: C

提示: 本题考查连词的意义和用法, 根据句意只有 even if 合乎题意。

译文: 罗德决心搞到音乐会的座位票即使这意味着他得整夜排队。

22. We hadn't met for 20 years, but I recognized her \_\_\_\_\_ I saw her.

- A. for the moment                      B. the moment when  
C. at the moment when                      D. the moment

答案: D

提示: 名词短语 the moment/minute/instant 用作连词, 表示“一……就……”。

译文: 我们 20 年没有见面了, 但我一看见她就认出了她。

23. Government reports, examination compositions, legal documents and most business letters are the main situations \_\_\_\_\_ formal language is used.

- A. in which                      B. on which  
C. in that                      D. at what

答案: A

提示: 该题考查定语从句中介词+which 的结构, 先行词 situations 与介词 in 搭配, 构成 in the situations 短语, 这里只是把定语从句中的介词前置了。

译文: 正式语言主要使用于政府报告、考试作文、法律文献和大部分的商务信函中。

24. \_\_\_\_\_ in the United States, St. Louis has now become the 24th largest city.

- A. The fourth biggest city it was                      B. Once the fourth biggest city  
C. Being the fourth biggest city                      D. It was once the fourth biggest city

答案: B

提示: B 作主语 St. Louis 的同位语, once 表示“曾经, 一度”之意。

译文: 圣路易斯曾经是美国第四大城市, 现在成了第二十四大城市。

25. \_\_\_\_\_ difficulties we may come across, we'll help one another to overcome them.

- A. However                      B. Whenever                      C. Wherever                      D. Whatever

答案: D

提示: whatever(however, wherever...)= no matter what(how, when, where...).从语法上来分析, whatever 可作代词、形容词; however 和 wherever 即可为副词又可为连词; whenever 是连词。而本句缺一个修饰名词的形容词; 只有 D 适合。

译文: 无论遇到什么困难, 我们都会相互帮助, 克服困难。

#### IV. 考级阶梯性练习

##### • 单项语法基础练习 •

- The hours \_\_\_\_\_ the children spend in their one-way relationship with television people undoubtedly affect their relationships with real-life people.  
A. in which            B. on which            C. when            D. that
- He will surely finish the job on time \_\_\_\_\_ he's left to do it in his own way.  
A. in that            B. so long as            C. in case            D. as far as
- \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature falling so rapidly, we couldn't go on with the experiment.  
A. Since            B. For            C. As            D. With
- Agriculture was a step in human progress \_\_\_\_\_ which subsequently there was not anything comparable until our own machine age.  
A. in            B. for            C. to            D. from
- Not until the game had begun \_\_\_\_\_ at the sports ground.  
A. had he arrived            B. would he have arrived  
C. did he arrive            D. should he have arrived
- The professor could hardly find sufficient grounds \_\_\_\_\_ his arguments in favour of the new theory.  
A. to be based on            B. to base on  
C. which to base on            D. on which to base
- There are signs \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants are becoming more popular with families.  
A. that            B. which            C. in which            D. whose
- I think I was at school, \_\_\_\_\_ I was staying with a friend during the vacation when I heard the news.  
A. or else            B. and then            C. or so            D. even so
- Living in the western part of the country has its problems, \_\_\_\_\_ obtaining fresh water is not the least.



- A. with which      B. for which      C. of which      D. which
10. \_\_\_\_\_, they had no chance of winning.  
 A. Although bravely they fought      B. Bravely as they fought  
 C. As they fought bravely      D. As bravely they fought
11. The sale usually takes place outside the house, with the audience \_\_\_\_\_ on benches, chairs or boxes.  
 A. having seated      B. seating  
 C. seated      D. having been seated
12. Although Anne is happy with her success she wonders \_\_\_\_\_ will happen to her private life.  
 A. that      B. what      C. it      D. this
13. Mike's uncle insists \_\_\_\_\_ in this hotel.  
 A. staying not      B. that he would not stay  
 C. not to stay      D. that he not stay
14. We agreed to accept \_\_\_\_\_ they thought was the best tourist guide.  
 A. whatever      B. whomever      C. whichever      D. whoever
15. Although many people view conflict as bad, conflict is sometimes useful \_\_\_\_\_ it forces people to test the relative merits of their attitudes and behaviors.  
 A. by which      B. to which      C. in that      D. so that
16. \_\_\_\_\_ she realized it was too late to go home.  
 A. No sooner it grew dark than      B. Scarcely had it grown dark than  
 C. Hardly did it grow dark that      D. It was not until dark that
17. \_\_\_\_\_ in this way, the situation doesn't seem so disappointing.  
 A. To look at      B. Looking at      C. Looked at      D. To be looked at
18. \_\_\_\_\_ as it was at such a time, his works attracted much attention.  
 A. Being published      B. Published  
 C. Publishing      D. To be published
19. Doing your homework is a sure way to improve your test scores, and this is especially true \_\_\_\_\_ it comes to classroom tests.  
 A. when      B. since      C. before      D. after
20. Careful surveys have indicated that as many as 50 percent of patients do not take drugs \_\_\_\_\_ directed.  
 A. like      B. so      C. which      D. as

## • 单项语法坡度练习 •

1. One of the requirements for a fire is that the material \_\_\_\_\_ to its burning temperature.  
A. is heated            B. will be heated    C. be heated            D. would be heated
2. This book will show the readers \_\_\_\_\_ can be used in other contexts.  
A. how that they have observed            B. that how they have observed  
C. how what they have observed            D. that they have observed
3. \_\_\_\_\_ your opinions are worth considering, the committee finds it unwise to place too much importance on them.  
A. As                    B. Since                C. Provided            D. While
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the claim about German economic might, it is somewhat surprising how relatively small the German economy actually is.  
A. To give            B. Given                C. Giving                D. Having given
5. The world's greatest sporting event, the Olympic Games, upholds the amateur ideal that \_\_\_\_\_ matters is not winning but participating.  
A. anything            B. it                    C. what                 D. everything
6. At the party we found the shy girl \_\_\_\_\_ her mother all the time.  
A. depending one                            B. coinciding with  
C. adhering to                                D. clinging to
7. Sometimes patients suffering from severe pain can be helped by "drugs" that aren't really drugs at all \_\_\_\_\_ sugar pills that contain no active chemical elements.  
A. or rather            B. rather than            C. but rather            D. other than
8. Fewer and fewer of today's workers expect to spend their working lives in the same field, \_\_\_\_\_ the same company.  
A. all else                                    B. much worse  
C. less likely                                D. let alone
9. We should be able to do the job for you quickly, \_\_\_\_\_ you give us all the necessary information.  
A. in case            B. provided that        C. or else                D. as if
10. Helen doesn't know much I spent in painting your house. If she ever found out, I'm sure \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. she'd never forgive me                    B. she never forgives me  
C. she'll never forgive me                    D. she never forgave me

11. \_\_\_\_\_ technological progress helps to relieve societies is a fact accepted by economists.  
A. /                      B. That                      C. Although                      D. There is
12. \_\_\_\_\_ surprises many youngsters.  
A. Butterflies are insects                      B. Butterflies being insects  
C. Butterflies to be insects                      D. The fact that butterflies are insects
13. The reason \_\_\_\_\_ I plan to go is \_\_\_\_\_ she will be disappointed if I don't.  
A. why...because                      B. that...that  
C. why...that                      D. that...for
14. The fact that he has been to college is no sign \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he is cultured                      B. that he is cultured  
C. which he is cultured                      D. but he is cultured
15. Being unable to find the right theme \_\_\_\_\_, his explanation was vague.  
A. to center his thoughts about                      B. in which to center, his thoughts  
C. on which to center his thoughts                      D. around which his thought centers
16. Burning is a process \_\_\_\_\_ the atoms of the fuel are combined with oxygen.  
A. from which                      B. through which                      C. at which                      D. in which
17. Ultrasonic sound is \_\_\_\_\_ a one \_\_\_\_\_ is inaudible to human ear.  
A. /...as                      B. that...as                      C. such...as                      D. that...it
18. There is no rule \_\_\_\_\_ has some exceptions.  
A. that                      B. but                      C. which                      D. what
19. Neptune is about thirty times as far from the Sun \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. as is the Earth                      B. the Earth is                      C. is the Earth                      D. is as the Earth
20. A man's worth lies \_\_\_\_\_ in what he has \_\_\_\_\_ in what he is.  
A. not so much...as                      B. rather...than  
C. more...than                      D. as...as

• 模拟自测题 •

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ to enter the building by the back door; however, the front door was locked.  
A. weren't supposed                      B. wouldn't be supposed  
C. were supposed                      D. would be supposed
2. The background music in an assembly line is designed \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. not being listened to                      B. being not listened to

- C. not to be listened to                      D. to be not listened to
3. The boy students in this school are nearly \_\_\_\_\_ as the girl students to say they intend to get a college degree in business.
- A. as likely twice                              B. likely as twice  
C. as twice likely                              D. twice as likely
4. Perhaps it wouldn't be \_\_\_\_\_ to go and see such a film.
- A. worthy you while                          B. worth of while  
C. worthy of while                            D. worth your while
5. \_\_\_\_\_ she wondered if she had made a mistake.
- A. Not until long afterwards that        B. Not long until afterwards  
C. It was not until long afterwards that    D. It was long afterwards until
6. So confused \_\_\_\_\_ that he didn't know how to start his lecture.
- A. since he became                            B. would he become  
C. that he became                              D. did he become
7. Since the couple could not \_\_\_\_\_ their differences, they decided to get a divorce.
- A. reconcile                      B. comply                      C. coincide                      D. resign
8. After the collision, he examined the considerable \_\_\_\_\_ to his car.
- A. ruin                      B. destruction                      C. damage                      D. injury
9. Output is now six times \_\_\_\_\_ it was before 1990.
- A. that                      B. what                      C. that which                      D. of that
10. The synthetic vitamins are identical \_\_\_\_\_ those naturally present in our food.
- A. for                      B. of                      C. as                      D. with
11. Just as a book is often judged \_\_\_\_\_ by the quality and appearance of its cover, a person is judged immediately by his appearance.
- A. previously                      B. uniquely                      C. outwardly                      D. initially
12. Recycling wastes slows down the rate \_\_\_\_\_ which we use up the Earth's finite resources.
- A. in                      B. of                      C. with                      D. at
13. He \_\_\_\_\_ another career but, as the time, he didn't have enough money to attend graduate school.
- A. might have chosen                          B. might choose  
C. had to choose                                  D. must have chosen
14. Many visitors praised the Palace \_\_\_\_\_ architecture is magnificent.
- A. for which                                      B. for whose



- C. on which to ruin nature                      D. of nature to be ruined
28. Though \_\_\_\_\_ rich, he was better off than at any other period in his life.  
A. by any means    B. by some means    C. by all means        D. by no means
29. A complete investigation into the causes of the accident should lead to improved standards and should \_\_\_\_\_ new operating procedures.  
A. result in            B. match with        C. subject to            D. proceed with
30. \_\_\_\_\_ popular belief that classical music is too complex, it achieves a simplicity that only a genius can create.  
A. Subject to        B. Contrary to        C. Familiar to            D. Similar to
31. The bond of true affection had pulled us—six very different men from six very different countries—across Antarctica; we proved in the end that we weren't very different \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. for all            B. as usual            C. in particular        D. after all
32. Though her parents \_\_\_\_\_ her musical ability, Jerrilou's piano playing is really terrible.  
A. pour scorn on                                  B. heap praise upon  
C. give vent to                                    D. cast light upon
33. Many of the scientists and engineers are judged \_\_\_\_\_ how great their achievements are.  
A. in spite of        B. in ways of        C. in favor of            D. in terms of
34. Although it was his first experience as chairman, he \_\_\_\_\_ over the meeting with great skill.  
A. presided        B. administered    C. mastered            D. executed
35. Both parties promised to \_\_\_\_\_ the contract to be signed the following day.  
A. keep with        B. tangle with        C. adhere to            D. devote to
36. Satellite communications are so up-to-date that even when \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of the Pacific, businessmen can contact their offices as if they were next door.  
A. gliding            B. cruising            C. piloting            D. patrolling
37. In the past ten years skyscrapers have developed \_\_\_\_\_ in Chicago and New York city.  
A. homogeneously                              B. simultaneously  
C. spontaneously                              D. harmoniously
38. The goal is to make higher education available to everyone who is willing and capable \_\_\_\_\_ his financial situation.  
A. with respect to                              B. in accord with

